# CONTROLLABILITY OF 

 DYNAMIC SYSTEMS
## The Green's Function Approach

## Ara S. Avetisyan

 Asatur Zh. Khurshudyan
## Controllability of Dynamic Systems

# Controllability of Dynamic Systems: 

The Green's Function Approach

By<br>Ara S. Avetisyan<br>Institute of Mechanics, NAS of Armenia

Asatur Zh. Khurshudyan
Institute of Mechanics, NAS of Armenia
Shanghai Jiao Tong University, China

Cambridge
Scholars
Publishing


Controllability of Dynamic Systems: The Green's Function Approach By Ara S. Avetisyan and Asatur Zh. Khurshudyan

Editor: Jonathan Bartlett, The Blyth Institute

This book first published 2018

Cambridge Scholars Publishing

Lady Stephenson Library, Newcastle upon Tyne, NE6 2PA, UK
British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library
Copyright © 2018 by Ara S. Avetisyan and Asatur Zh. Khurshudyan

All rights for this book reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of the copyright owner.

ISBN (10): 1-5275-0892-7
ISBN (13): 978-1-5275-0892-7
A. A.: To Academician of NAS of Armenia Sergei A. Ambartsumyan, on the occasion of his $95^{\text {th }}$ birthday

As. Kh.: To my dearest mom

## Contents

List of Figures ..... xi
List of Tables ..... xv
Preface ..... xvii
Acknowledgements ..... xxi
List of Symbols ..... xxiii
1 Introduction ..... 1
1.1 Controllability ..... 2
1.1.1 Exact Controllability ..... 3
1.1.2 Approximate Controllability ..... 5
1.1.3 Choice of the Set of Admissible Controls ..... 7
1.1.4 Resolving Controls ..... 9
1.1.5 Methods of Finding Resolving Controls ..... 10
1.2 The Green's Function Method for Linear Systems ..... 13
1.2.1 Particular Cases ..... 20
1.3 The Green's Function Method for Nonlinear Systems ..... 29
1.3.1 Cacuci's Approach ..... 31
1.3.2 Frasca's Approach ..... 35
1.4 The Green's Function Method in Controllability Analysis ..... 48
2 Linear Systems ..... 51
2.1 Problem Statement ..... 52
2.2 Resolving System ..... 55
2.2.1 Particular Cases: Exact Controllability ..... 59
2.2.2 Particular Cases: Approximate Controllability ..... 61
2.3 Particular Solutions of the Resolving System ..... 66
2.3.1 Exact Controllability ..... 66
2.3.2 Approximate Controllability ..... 73
2.4 Examples ..... 81
2.4.1 Finite Thin Inhomogeneous Rod Heated from Both Ends ..... 81
2.4.2 Semi-Infinite Rod Heated by a Point Source ..... 92
2.4.3 Elastic Beam Subjected to a Dynamic Load with Uncertainty ..... 98
2.4.4 Square Heated from the Boundary ..... 111
3 Nonlinear Systems ..... 127
3.1 Problem Statement ..... 128
3.2 Resolving System ..... 130
3.3 Examples ..... 133
3.3.1 Pendulum with Cubic Non-Linearity ..... 133
3.3.2 Sine-Gordon Equation ..... 141
3.3.3 Approximation Error Analysis ..... 142
3.4 Burgers' Equation ..... 144
viii
Summary ..... 159
Bibliography ..... 163
Index ..... 191

## List of Figures

1.1 Schematic presentation of exact and approximate con- trollabilities ..... 7
1.2 Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\delta(t)$ ..... 45
1.3 Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\theta(t)$ ..... 45
1.4 Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\sin (t)$ ..... 46
1.5 Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\exp (t)$ ..... 46
1.6 Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and Er (right) for $f(t)=1+t+t^{2}+t^{3}$ ..... 47
1.7 Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\ln (1+t)$ ..... 47
$2.1 \delta_{\zeta}$ for decreasing values of $\zeta$ ..... 93
2.2 Plots of $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}$ and $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{1 T}$ against $T$ ..... 108
2.3 Initial (left) and implemented terminal (right) distributions of temperature in the rod with $\chi(x)=\exp (\alpha x)$ when $u_{b} \equiv 10^{-4}$119
2.4 Implemented terminal state (left) for quasi-polynomial control regime (right) with $u^{o}=5 \cdot 10^{-7}, m=n=1$ ..... 119
2.5 Implemented terminal state (left) for trigonometric con- trol regime (right) with $u^{o}=9 \cdot 10^{-4}, m=3, n=1$. ..... 120
2.6 Implemented terminal state (left) for switching control regime (right) with $u^{o}=2 \cdot 10^{-5}, t_{1}=25, t_{2}=30$, $t_{3}=45, t_{4}=50, t_{5}=65, t_{6}=70$ ..... 120
2.7 Implemented terminal state (left) for the switching con- trol regime (2.73) (right) ..... 121
2.8 Implemented terminal state (left) for the switching con- trol regime (2.74) (right) ..... 121
2.9 Maximal uncontrolled displacement at $t=0.5 \mathrm{~s}$ (left) and at $t=T$ (right) ..... 122
2.10 Maximal uncontrolled axial stress at $t=0.5 \mathrm{~s}$ (left) and at $t=T$ (right) ..... 122
2.11 Controlled total displacement (left) and axial stress of the beam at $t=T$ : optimal stopping control ..... 123
2.12 Controlled total displacement (left) and axial stress of the beam at $t=T$ : switching control ..... 123
2.13 Initial (left) and implemented terminal (right) distribu- tions of temperature in the square when $u_{b} \equiv-10^{-4}$ ..... 124
2.14 Implemented terminal state (left) for quasi-polynomial control regime (right) with $u^{o}=-10^{-5}, m=0.75$ and $n=1$ ..... 124
2.15 Implemented terminal state (left) for trigonometric con- trol regime (right) with $u^{o}=10^{-4}, m=7$ and $n=1.5$ ..... 125
3.1 Dependence $\Delta$ (left) and $I$ (right) against the control time $T$ for a constant control $u^{o}=w_{T}$ ..... 135
3.2 Dependence of $\Delta$ (left) and $I$ (right) against the control time $T$ for the harmonic control with $u^{o}=w_{T}, \omega=\frac{\pi}{2}$, $\gamma=0$. ..... 136
3.3 Dependence of $I_{n}$ against the control time $T$ for the switching control with $t_{1}=1, t_{2}=2, t_{3}=3$ ..... 138
3.4 Dependence of $\Delta$ against the control time $T$ for the switching control ..... 139
3.5 Dependence of $I_{n}$ (left) and $\Delta$ (right) against the control time $T$ for the discrete control ..... 140
3.6 Dependence $\Delta$ (left) and $I$ (right) against control time $T$ for constant control with $\alpha=1$ ..... 142
3.7 Logarithmic error of approximation of $\Theta_{T}$ by its Fourier series expansion for $N=50$ ..... 150
3.8 Absolute difference between the implemented and re- quired terminal states (left) and the corresponding con- trol regime (3.27) ..... 151
3.9 Uncontrolled flow in the layer at $t=10.35$ ..... 155
3.10 Flow in the layer at $t=9.2$ (left) and corresponding time-harmonic control regime (right) ..... 156
3.11 Flow in the layer at $t=7.15$ (left) and corresponding time-harmonic control regime (right) ..... 156
3.12 Flow in the layer at $t=8.5$ (left) and corresponding impulsive control regime (right) ..... 157
3.13 Flow in the layer at $t=8.5$ (left) and corresponding impulsive control regime (right) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 157

## List of Tables

1.1 Minimal and maximal logarithmic errors of approxima- tion for various source functions: quadratic potential ..... 44
2.1 Residue (2.53) for different control regimes: $\chi(x)=$ $\exp (\alpha x)$ ..... 91
2.2 Residue (2.91) for different control regimes ..... 118
3.1 Relative error measures of approximation (3.7) for $N(w, t)=$$w^{3}$. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 1433.2 Relative error measures of approximation (3.7) for $N(w, t)=$$\sin w$. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 143

## Preface

Controllability, i.e., the ability of a system to be transmitted from a given initial state to a required terminal state by an admissible control within a finite time, is one of the most crucial characteristics of control systems. Controllability is of two main types: exact and approximate. The choice depends on how precisely the required terminal state is implemented. The existence of powerful computers and efficient numerical tools for linear and nonlinear equations allows the exact or approximate controllability analysis to be carried out numerically even for extremely complicated systems. Such analysis can bring with it a burdensome computational cost. However, in some special cases a simplifying step can considerably speed up the analysis. Such a step, for example, could be the determination of explicit dependence between state and control functions, i.e., a solution of the state constraints. While this is to some extent possible for linear systems, for nonlinear systems it is much more complicated.

The main motivation behind presenting our work to a wider scientific community is to illustrate how efficiently the Green's function method can be applied in controllability analysis of both linear and nonlinear dynamic systems and possibly initiate new studies in this di-
rection. We illustrate this idea by a basic analysis of a few typical examples. Even though the examples were picked intuitively rather than systematically, they include some of the common issues which usually make the controllability analysis complicated: coordinate dependent material characteristics, unbounded domains, uncertainty in internal or external parameters, higher dimensions, specific non-linearities, etc. We also address the problem of determination of resolving control functions in an explicit form, which speeds up the controllability analysis further.

Generally speaking, due to, for example, modeling inaccuracies, random issues, uncertainties, etc., even by means of highly precise production technologies it is practically impossible to implement the desired state exactly. The terminal state implemented by the "best" choice of admissible control is more often "sufficiently" close to the desired state, rather than coinciding with it exactly. That is the motivation behind paying the most attention specifically to the approximate controllability. Nevertheless, possibilities of exact implementation of required states are shown as well.

In order to make the reading more engaging, the book is completely free of rigorous mathematical statements such as lemmas, propositions, theorems, as well as redundant long proofs, which can be found in the cited references. The focus is concentrated on the ways the developed approach can be applied in dealing with particular control problems. Thus, the book is mostly intended for researchers who are focused on the applications of control, as well as for engineers attempting to apply control techniques in their practice. It can also be useful for postgraduate students in mechanics, physics, engineering, applied mathematics, etc.
xviii

Even though we study the controllability of linear and nonlinear differential equations arising in many applied areas of science, including physics, production, mechanical, aerospace, civil and chemical engineering, hydrodynamics, information processing and transfer, communications, etc., we refrain from giving specific recommendations regarding particular real-life objects, processes or phenomena. The reason is very simple: we stand on mathematical ground and look at all those systems from a mathematical viewpoint. Nevertheless, we hope that the book will capture the interest of applied scientists towards the approach which will lead to its real-life implementations.

Ara S. Avetisyan
Asatur Zh. Khurshudyan
Yerevan, Shanghai, 2018

## Acknowledgements

A. A:

I would like to acknowledge the contribution of all my teachers at Yerevan State University.

## As. Kh.:

Prof. Dr. Benedikt Wirth (Univeristy of Münster) has been a brilliant role model for how a scientist should operate. Many ideas that later laid the foundations of the book arose in various discussions with Dr. Shant Arakelyan (Yerevan State University). My colleague and good fellow Dr. H. V. Hovhannisyan (Yerevan State University) introduced me to the powerful method of Green's function. Prof. Dr. Ed. Kh. Grigoryan (Yerevan State University) described how the Green's function method can work when other approaches fail. I am heartily grateful to them.

It would be hardly possible to write this book without the continual support and care of my wife, unceasingly helping me throughout the whole process of writing. I always admire her unwavering patience and bright mind.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We are thankful to Jonathan Bartlett (The Blyth Institute) for his invaluable help in careful editing of the book and for improving comments. We also express our sincere gratitude to Victoria Carruthers, the commissioning editor at the Cambridge Scholars Publishing, for her support during the preparation of this book.

## List of Symbols

All notations and symbols are consistent over the book. Therefore, in order to assist readers who do not engage the book linearly, the main notions, functions, and symbols occurring in the book are defined separately here.

| Symbol | Name \& Definition |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\mathbb{R}$ | Real numbers |
| $\mathbb{R}^{+}$ | Positive real numbers |
| $\mathbb{N}$ | Natural numbers |
| $m, n, k \ldots$ | $m, n, k \in \mathbb{N}$ |
| $\Omega$ | An open subset of $\mathbb{R}^{n}$ |
| $\AA$ | Interior of $\Omega$ |
| $\partial \Omega$ | Boundary of $\Omega$ |
|  | $\partial \Omega=\Omega \backslash \Omega$ |
| $\bar{\Omega}$ | Closure of $\Omega$ <br>  <br> $\bar{\Omega}=\Omega \cup \partial \Omega$ |
| $\operatorname{supp}(\cdot)$ | Support of a function <br>  <br>  <br> $\operatorname{supp}(f)=\overline{\{\boldsymbol{x}, f(\boldsymbol{x}) \neq 0\}}$ |


| Symbol | Name \& Definition |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\delta$ | Dirac delta function $\begin{aligned} & \delta(x)=\left\{\begin{array}{ll} 0, & x \neq 0, \\ \infty, & x=0, \end{array} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(x) \mathrm{d} x=1,\right. \end{aligned}, \begin{aligned} & \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \delta(x-\xi) \mathrm{d} x=f(\xi) \forall \xi \in \mathbb{R} \end{aligned}$ |
| $\delta$ | Multidimensional Dirac function $\boldsymbol{\delta}(\boldsymbol{x})=\prod_{k=1}^{n} \delta\left(x_{k}\right), \boldsymbol{x}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ |
| $\delta_{m}^{n}$ | Kronecker symbol $\delta_{m}^{n}=\left\{\begin{array}{l} 1, m=n \\ 0, m \neq n \end{array}\right.$ |
| $\theta$ | Heaviside function $\begin{aligned} & \theta(x)= \begin{cases}1, & x>0 \\ \frac{1}{2}, & x=0 \\ 0, & x<0\end{cases} \\ & \theta(x)=\int_{-\infty}^{x} \delta(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi \end{aligned}$ |
| sign | Sign function $\begin{aligned} & \operatorname{sign}(x)= \begin{cases}1, & x>0, \\ 0, & x=0 \\ -1, & x<0,\end{cases} \\ & \operatorname{sign}(x)=2 \theta(x)-1 \end{aligned}$ |


| Symbol | Name \& Definition |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\chi_{\Omega}$ | Indicator function $\begin{aligned} & \chi_{\Omega}(\boldsymbol{x})= \begin{cases}1, & \boldsymbol{x} \in \Omega \\ 0, & \text { else },\end{cases} \\ & \chi_{[a, b]}(x)=\theta(x-a)-\theta(x-b) \end{aligned}$ |
| rect | Rectangular function $\begin{aligned} & \operatorname{rect}(x)= \begin{cases}0, & \|x\|>\frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2}, & \|x\|=\frac{1}{2} \\ 1, & \|x\|<\frac{1}{2}\end{cases} \\ & \operatorname{rect}(x)=\theta\left(\frac{1}{4}-x^{2}\right)=\theta\left(x+\frac{1}{2}\right)-\theta\left(x-\frac{1}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$ |
| erf | Gauss error function $\operatorname{erf}(x)=\frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{0}^{x} \exp \left[-\xi^{2}\right] \mathrm{d} \xi$ |
| $\boldsymbol{x}$ | State Variable $x \in \Omega$ |
| $t$ | Time $t \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$ |
| $\boldsymbol{w}$ | State function $\boldsymbol{w}: \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ |
| W | State space <br> Appropriate Hilbert space |
| $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}$ | Initial state $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ |

## LIST OF SYMBOLS

| Symbol | Name \& Definition |
| :---: | :---: |
| $\boldsymbol{w}_{T}$ | Required terminal state $\boldsymbol{w}_{T}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ |
| $\overline{\mathbf{W}}$ | Restriction of $\mathbf{W}$ for fixed $t$ <br> Corresponding Hilbert space: $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}, \boldsymbol{w}_{T} \in \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ |
| $\\|\cdot\\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}$ | Norm in $\overline{\mathbf{W}}$ |
| $\boldsymbol{u}$ | Distributed control $\boldsymbol{u}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{k}$ |
| U | Distributed control space Appropriate Hilbert space |
| $u_{b}$ | Boundary control $\boldsymbol{u}_{b}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ |
| $\mathbf{U}_{b}$ | Boundary control space Appropriate Hilbert space |
| U | Set of admissible controls $\mathcal{U}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathbf{U},\|\boldsymbol{u}\| \leq \epsilon$, o.p.c. $\}$ |
| $\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}$ | Set of resolving controls |
| $f$ | External influence $\boldsymbol{f}: \mathcal{U} \times \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ |
| F | Influence space <br> Appropriate Hilbert space |
| $L^{1}$ | $L^{1}$ space $L^{1}(\Omega)=\left\{\boldsymbol{f}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}, \int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\| \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x}<\infty\right\}$ |
| $\\|\cdot\\|_{L^{1}}$ | $\begin{aligned} & L^{1} \text {-norm } \\ & \\|\boldsymbol{f}\\|_{L^{1}(\Omega)}=\int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\| \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x} \end{aligned}$ |


| Symbol | Name \& Definition |
| :---: | :---: |
| $L_{l o c}^{1}$ | $\begin{aligned} & L_{l o c}^{1} \text { space } \\ & L_{l o c}^{1}(\Omega)=\left\{\boldsymbol{f}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}, \int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}) \boldsymbol{\varphi}(\boldsymbol{x})\| \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x}<\infty\right\} \end{aligned}$ <br> for each infinitely differentiable function <br> $\varphi: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ with $\operatorname{supp}(\varphi) \subseteq \Omega$ |
| $L^{2}$ | $\begin{aligned} & L^{2} \text { space } \\ & L^{2}(\Omega)=\left\{\boldsymbol{f}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m},\left[\int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\|^{2} \mathrm{~d} \boldsymbol{x}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}<\infty\right\} \end{aligned}$ |
| $\\|\cdot\\|_{L^{2}}$ | $\begin{aligned} & L^{2} \text {-norm } \\ & \\|\boldsymbol{f}\\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)}=\left[\int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\|^{2} \mathrm{~d} \boldsymbol{x}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$ |
| $L_{\nu}^{2}$ | Weighted $L^{2}$ space $L_{\nu}^{2}(\Omega)=\left\{\boldsymbol{f}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m},\left[\int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\|^{2} \nu(\boldsymbol{x}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}<\infty\right\}$ |
| $\\|\cdot\\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}}$ | Weighted $L^{2}$-norm $\\|\boldsymbol{f}\\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}(\Omega)}=\left[\int_{\Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\|^{2} \nu(\boldsymbol{x}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$ |
| $L^{\infty}$ | $L^{\infty}$ space $L^{\infty}(\Omega)=\left\{\boldsymbol{f}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}, \sup _{\boldsymbol{x} \in \Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\|<\infty\right\}$ |
| $\\|\cdot\\|_{L^{\infty}}$ | $\begin{aligned} & L^{\infty} \text { or sup-norm } \\ & \\|\boldsymbol{f}\\|_{L^{\infty}(\Omega)}=\sup _{\boldsymbol{x} \in \Omega}\|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x})\| \end{aligned}$ |
| D | State operator $\mathcal{D}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{F}$ |


| Symbol | Name \& Definition |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\mathcal{B}$ | Boundary operator |
|  | $\mathcal{B}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{U}_{b}$ |
| $\mathcal{I}$ | Operator of initial conditions |
|  | $\mathcal{I}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ |
| $\mathcal{T}$ | Operator of terminal conditions |
|  | $\mathcal{T}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ |
| $\mathcal{R}_{T}$ | Residue |
|  | $\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\left\\|\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right\\|_{\overline{\mathbf{W}}}$ |
| $\Delta$ | Laplace operator $_{n}$ |
|  | $\Delta \boldsymbol{w}=\sum_{k=1}^{n} \frac{\partial^{2} \boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{x})}{\partial x_{k}^{2}}$ |
| $\|\cdot\|$ | Euclidean norm |
|  | $\|\boldsymbol{x}\|=\sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^{n} x_{k}^{2}}$ for $\boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{R}^{n}$ |
|  |  |

1

## Introduction

> "Everything must be made as simple as possible. But not simpler."
> - Albert Einstein

This introductory chapter begins by laying out the main concepts and problems the book is dealing with (Section 1.1), and then proceeds to the mathematical foundations of the solution technique including the description of the Green's function method for both linear and nonlinear systems (Sections 1.2 and 1.3). The technique itself is then described in detail in Section 1.4. The goal for the chapter is to set out the issues in an understandable manner for researchers without special mathematical training (especially for engineers and applied scientists) so it is bereft of mathematical formalism.

All the notations that are not common or well-known are explained within the text directly after being used.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Controllability

The majority of dynamic systems, e.g., vehicles, aircrafts, robots, production equipment, financial and biological processes, etc., are somehow controlled by a predetermined program or influence often referred to as control programs or simply controls. Controls are designed and implemented by special controllers attached to the system. Controllers have limited capabilities, so that restrained types of controls can be elaborated. Controls that a controller is able to use in design are often referred to as admissible controls.

Dynamic systems may need to be controlled for a variety of different purposes. Put simply, the aim of a control is to provide a stable transition of a dynamic system from a given state to a required terminal one within a fixed amount of time. Additional requirements, such as constraints on the state at intermediate time instants, constraints on control, mixed constraints, etc., may be considered as well. For a given system, situations may occur such that, even for a fixed range of system parameters, prescribed initial and terminal states, and a fixed control time, it is impossible to develop an admissible control providing the desired state transition. That is why before exploiting control systems, an overall examination of the ability to accommodate the desired state in the required time by means of attached controllers is carried out. This property is called controllability.

There are two main types of controllability - exact and approximate. A system is called exactly controllable if by a specific choice of admissible controls it can be transitioned from a given state to a required state exactly in a finite amount of time. There is a huge body of references devoted to the development of methods of exact control-
lability analysis and to the establishment of exact controllability for particular types of dynamic systems. For general introduction into the subject, the reader is referred to [1-28] and references therein.

### 1.1.1 Exact Controllability

Consider the mathematical interpretation of controllability. Let the state of a dynamic system be characterized by a vector-function $\boldsymbol{w}$ : $\mathbb{R}^{k} \times \mathbb{R}^{n} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}, k, n, m \in \mathbb{N}$, satisfying the state equations of the system and possibly some other constraints such as boundary and initial conditions, intermediate state constraints, etc. In what follows, the system of such constraints on $\boldsymbol{w}$ is referred to as state constraints.

The simplest problem of control now can be formulated as follows. By appropriate choice of the control vector $\boldsymbol{u}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{k}$, being chosen from a given set of admissible controls, denoted here by $\mathcal{U}$, the system is required to achieve the given terminal state $\boldsymbol{w}_{T}: \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ within a required finite time $T>0$. The controllability of the system is verified by evaluating the mismatch of the desired state and the state implemented by a specific choice of $\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}$, i.e., the residue

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\left\|\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} . \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here the subscript $T$ at the residue is a short form of denoting the obvious dependence $\mathcal{R}=\mathcal{R}(\cdot, T)$.

The choice of the norm in (1.1) usually depends on the regularity of external influences, the consistency of boundary and initial data, etc. Very often $L^{1}, L^{2}$ and $L^{\infty}$ norms are considered, given by

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\int_{\Omega}\left|\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right| \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x}
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\left[\int_{\Omega}\left|\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right|^{2} \mathrm{~d} \boldsymbol{x}\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}, \\
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\sup _{\boldsymbol{x} \in \Omega}\left|\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right|
\end{gathered}
$$

respectively. Here $|\cdot|$ denotes the Euclidean norm.
Then, the system is called exactly controllable if there exists $\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}$ such that at a prescribed instant $T$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=0 . \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note also that (1.1) is the simplest expression for the residue. More complicated forms of (1.1) are usually considered in applied problems. For example, if the aim of a control is the implementation of the terminal condition

$$
\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \text { in } \Omega
$$

at the instant $t=T$, then the residue (1.1) takes the form

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\left\|\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}](\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x})-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} .
$$

In many dynamic control problems, especially in those arising in engineering (e.g. motion ceasing, vibration suspension, material heating, etc.) the case of $\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \equiv 0$, i.e., transmitting the system to the equilibrium state, is the primary consideration. If a corresponding admissible control exists, then the system is usually referred to as null-controllable (sometimes null-exact-controllable).

Remark 1.1. It is noteworthy that for linear systems the null-controllability is equivalent to the ordinary exact controllability in the sense
that the function

$$
\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, t)=\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, t)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})
$$

satisfies the same state equation as $\boldsymbol{w}$ but with a different right-hand side and $a$ homogeneous terminal condition. Moreover, in the case of consistent boundary, initial, and terminal data, the form of boundary and initial conditions are preserved.

### 1.1.2 Approximate Controllability

Nevertheless, depending on controller capabilities, it may turn out that for any given initial state an admissible control providing the desired state in a given time does not exist, i.e., the control system is not exactly controllable. The lack of exact controllability may occur because of many reasons [29-42], such as topology [30], unreachable terminal states, error in the approximation of the solution, unboundedness of the domain [33], uncertainty in internal or external parameters [35], type of boundary condition [42], etc. In other words, lack of controllability means that, for prescribed initial and terminal states and a fixed control time $T$, the equality (1.2) does not hold exactly for any $\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}$, i.e., the residue

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})>0 \text { on } \mathcal{U} .
$$

Usually, by extending the set of admissible controls, e.g., complementing it by sliding modes [43], a non-controllable system may become controllable (see, for instance, [44-46] and references therein). On the other hand, this extension may result in, for instance, instability of the system. More specifically, it might happen that in order to ensure exact controllability, it is necessary to complement the set of admissi-

## 1. INTRODUCTION

ble controls by impulsive impacts expressed by the Dirac function and its derivatives. Being efficient in general, such controls can lead to a discontinuity of the state function and may cause infinite growth in the total energy of the system. That is why control systems are elaborated only after a comprehensive theoretical analysis on simultaneous controllability, stability, reliability, flexibility, etc. ${ }^{1}$.

It might also be the case that, even though (1.2) does not hold exactly for prescribed initial and terminal states, and, given control time $T$ by any choice of the admissible control, at least for one admissible control the implemented state is sufficiently close in the sense of the distance in $\overline{\mathbf{W}}$ to the given state, i.e., it is in a small $\varepsilon$-neighborhood of the desired state (see Fig. 1.1). In other words,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u}) \leq \varepsilon \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

with required precision $\varepsilon>0$. If for given inputs there exists an appropriate admissible control then the system is called approximately controllable.

Exact controllability implies approximate controllability since exactly controllable systems are approximately controllable with arbitrarily small precision $\varepsilon$. However, the reverse is not correct. Thus, the class of approximately controllable systems is wider than that of exactly controllable systems, in the sense that on $\mathcal{U}$ inequality (1.3) is satisfied more likely than equality (1.2). Moreover, the set of terminal states that are reachable approximately is apparently much wider than the set that are reachable exactly.

Evaluation and verification of (1.2) or (1.3) on $\mathcal{U}$ may be sophisticated especially when $\mathcal{U}$ has a complex structure or when the state

[^0]

Figure 1.1: Schematic presentation of exact and approximate controllabilities
constraints have a complicated form and, in particular, are nonlinear. Despite the amount of existing references, the derivation of easy-toverify criteria for exact and/or approximate controllability of a particular control system is still a very challenging and important problem in modern control theory.

For further introductions to the concept, as well as existing mathematical approaches for providing (1.3), the reader is referred to [20, $47-55]$ and references therein. See also [56-62] for particular systems.

### 1.1.3 Choice of the Set of Admissible Controls

In practice, the set of admissible controls for a particular system consists of programs that the attached controller is able to design and

## 1. INTRODUCTION

implement. However, in dealing with theoretical models, this set is usually allowed to include a wide class of functions ${ }^{2}$. On one hand, this allows exploration of new opportunities leading to an improvement of the control system under study and accordingly an enrichment of the controller capability; on the other hand, it makes the theoretical study much more sophisticated.

Because of this, the set of admissible controls is chosen in such a way that the solution of the state constraints exists in $\mathbf{W}$ and is unique, so that $\mathcal{R}_{T}$ is well defined. Depending on specific requirements on $\boldsymbol{w}$, the admissible controls may be restricted by some additional constraints, such as sign-constantness, boundedness, differentiability up to a required order, specific decay rate, etc.

In many applications, largely arising from engineering, the aim of the control is not just to implement a required terminal state at a given instant $T$, but rather to ensure that in all consequent instances $t>T$ the state of the system will continue to be stably close to the achieved one. Such requirements are appropriate in motion control, structural heating, material forming, vibration suspension, damage healing, electromagnetic radiation, etc. In such cases, when the desired terminal state is achieved, the controller stops elaborating controls. In other words, admissible controls operate within the interval $[0, T]$ and

$$
\boldsymbol{u} \equiv 0 \text { as } t>T .
$$

Mathematically this fact is expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{supp}(\boldsymbol{u}) \subseteq[0, T], \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^1]where $\operatorname{supp}(\boldsymbol{u})$ denotes the support of $\boldsymbol{u}$. Functions with (1.4) are called compactly supported. The idea of compactly supported control was introduced in the pioneering work [63] and was developed further in [66-71]. In what follows it is always assumed that admissible controls are compactly supported in $[0, T]$.

Then, in general, the set of admissible controls can be defined as

$$
\mathcal{U}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathbf{U},|\boldsymbol{u}| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(\boldsymbol{u}) \subseteq[0, T], \text { o.p.c. }\}
$$

with prescribed $\epsilon$. Here o.p.c. means other possible constraints.
Other possible constraints that are imposed on admissible controls may be derived in the case of boundary control. Such a constraint is derived when a consistency between boundary and initial and terminal data is required. The resulting constraints are discrete equalities given at the instants $t=0$ and $t=T$ of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{u}(0)=\boldsymbol{u}_{0}, \quad \boldsymbol{u}(T)=\boldsymbol{u}_{T} \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

They are usually considered as boundary conditions for admissible controls. Then, $\mathcal{U}$ is complemented with (1.5).

Despite all possible constraints, depending on the inner structure of $\mathbf{U}$ or $\mathbf{U}_{b}$, the set $\mathcal{U}$ may still be too large, causing the verification of (1.2) or (1.3) on it to be very computationally costly. However, if admissible controls satisfying all possible constraints are found explicitly, computational costs can be reduced.

### 1.1.4 Resolving Controls

Obviously, not all admissible controls ensure controllability. Moreover, as mentioned above, it might happen that there does not exist

## 1. INTRODUCTION

an admissible control ensuring exact or even approximate controllability of a particular system at all. The admissible controls that provide controllability in a given $T$ are called resolving. The set of all resolving controls is denoted by $\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}$. In general, $\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }} \subsetneq \mathcal{U}$. In this terminology, the lack of controllability means that $\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}=\varnothing$.

In many problems, especially about approximate controllability, an inequality type constraint of the form $|\boldsymbol{u}| \leq \tilde{\epsilon}$ can be derived with an estimated $\tilde{\epsilon}$, which, in the case when $\tilde{\epsilon} \geq 0$, is sufficient for approximate controllability. In such cases, all admissible controls

$$
\boldsymbol{u} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U},|\boldsymbol{u}| \leq \tilde{\epsilon}\}
$$

ensure the approximate controllability of the system.
Nevertheless, since the constraint is only a sufficient condition, then, in general, $\tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }} \subsetneq \mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}$. In some exceptional cases it might happen that $\tilde{\epsilon} \geq \epsilon$, so that $\mathcal{U} \subseteq \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}$, i.e., all admissible controls provide approximate controllability. On the other hand, when $\tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\varnothing$, for proper controllability analysis the residue must be evaluated on the whole $\mathcal{U}$ and (1.2) or (1.3) must be checked directly.

### 1.1.5 Methods of Finding Resolving Controls

The verification of (1.2) or (1.3) is enough only for establishing whether a particular system is exactly or approximately controllable or not. When dealing with real-life systems it is equally important to find admissible controls providing either type of controllability explicitly, which would significantly reduce computational costs.

There exist at least two ways for explicit representation of resolving controls. The first way is to use some norm minimizing algorithm
for the minimization of (1.1). As a general statement, the problem is formulated as a constrained minimization problem

$$
\left\|\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} \xrightarrow[\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}]{ } \min
$$

where $\boldsymbol{w}$ is subjected to state constraints. Additional constraints on the control, such as cost functional, equality type constraints like (1.5), etc., can be considered as well. If the minimum is attained and is zero, then

$$
\boldsymbol{u}=\operatorname{argmin}\left\|\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} \in \mathcal{U}
$$

provides exact controllability of the system at $T$. If the minimum is attained and is not equal to zero but remains smaller than a required precision $\varepsilon$ then the system is approximately controllable at $T$ with precision $\varepsilon$.

Several efficient numerical tools exist for norm minimization including fast gradient methods, the momentum method, nonlinear programming, etc., and their modifications (see, for instance, [72-74]). The norm minimization approach has an advantage that besides explicit representation for minimizers, in cases when (1.2) does not hold, it is possible to identify how precisely (1.3) does hold. Nevertheless, the approach requires derivatives of $\mathcal{R}_{T}$ and may require high computational costs.

The second approach is based on the evaluation of the constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, T)-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})=\mathbf{0} \text { a.e. in } \Omega, \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is equivalent to (1.2). If $\boldsymbol{w}$ is determined from the state constraints explicitly then the set of the resolving controls is defined as

## 1. INTRODUCTION

follows:

$$
\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U},(1.6)\} .
$$

If (1.6) is luckily solved for $\boldsymbol{u}$ exactly then the resolving controls ensure exact controllability of the system. However, this only happens in a very few special cases. In general, (1.6) is solved for $\boldsymbol{u}$ approximately, providing controls that ensure approximate controllability of the system.

Moreover, as a matter of fact, the resolving controls are not unique, so that this approach allows one to consider problems of optimal choice, i.e., problems of finding $\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}$ extremizing some cost functional $\kappa: \mathbf{U} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$. Compared with the previous approach, in this case it is not so costly once the set $\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}$ is constructed. On the other hand, an explicit solution of (1.6) can be difficult, especially for nonlinear state constraints, large $n$ and $m$, etc.

The main disadvantage of the approach is in the difficulty of deriving the explicit form of the state function $\boldsymbol{w}$. Nevertheless, since there exist handbooks like $[75,76]$ containing exact solutions to many nonlinear differential equations, this approach can still be applied for the analysis of various systems arising in mechanics and physics.

Apparently, the explicit representation of resolving controls strongly depends on the solvability of the constraints eventually obtained for controls. Sometimes, it is easier and more efficient to heuristically choose admissible controls which contain a set of free parameters that satisfy some of the constraints. The remaining part of the constraints can be satisfied by appropriate choice of the free parameters (see Section 2.3 below for details). If such a representation is derived, then the controllability analysis will be greatly simplified.

### 1.2 The Green's Function Method for Linear Systems

Enormous technological progress over the last century has lead to the design of new machines and equipment with impressive features. This has also provided opportunities for a significant improvement of existing equipment. A very important step in the pathway from design to production of such machines is theoretical modeling. The development of theoretical modeling tools have had to increase in coverage in order to match the complementary increase in sophistication of production requirements.

Theoretical models use some idealized hypotheses and specific constructions which allow one to reproduce the main functions of the modeled system. Depending on how precise those structures and hypotheses express the real system, the model is considered to be acceptable for specific purposes (or not). After deriving the theoretical model, some constitutive relations between the characteristics of the system being studied are used to derive its mathematical model.

Mathematical models usually provide algebraic, functional, differential, difference, integral, or mixed types of constraints, consisting of relations between the system's internal and external characteristics. Those constraints contain equations, inequalities, inclusions, and their coupled systems. The model is usually complemented by some additional constraints needed to detach a specific solution and make the complete system of constraints consistent ${ }^{3}$. Then, the mathematical model provides a necessary base for the quantitative and qualitative

[^2]
## 1. INTRODUCTION

analysis of the theoretical model, allowing the ability to explore the specific issues for which the system is modeled.

Two main kind of methods exist for analyzing mathematical models: exact and approximate, depending on what type of calculations they involve. Commonly speaking, exact methods are more preferable, since they provide complete description of the dependence between unknown and known quantities. Nevertheless, such methods are only applicable to a very restricted classes of models. Therefore, approximate methods are used more often.

The choice of a specific method of analysis depends first of all on the type of functional description provided by the mathematical model. Specifically, it depends on the aims and required accuracy of the analysis. In particular, if the required accuracy is not very high, a rough approximation may be used to reduce computational costs. Conversely, higher accuracy can often require enormous computational costs, and the model analysis is likewise time consuming.

The complexity of the mathematical model plays a crucial role in deciding how one analyzes a particular model. The simplest mathematical models are those providing linear constraints, also referred to as linear models. The corresponding analysis is called linear analysis. Even though they only allow the ability to capture the basic character of the system, linear models are easier to analyze. This analysis is facilitated by the presence of various well-developed mathematical methods for both rigorous and approximate analysis of linear models ${ }^{4}$.

The mathematical model of most linear dynamic systems as a rule

[^3]consists of initial-boundary value problems for differential equations. Among well-known methods for linear non-homogeneous differential equations is the method of using the Green's function. There is a huge body of references on the theory and applications of the method. The reader is referred to [77-92] and references therein, which is not even close to being a full list of references on the subject. Nevertheless, they contain all the necessary details needed for applying the Green's function technique to the analysis of linear systems.

The concept of the Green's function, which since its invention has led to an abundance of very important results in physics and engineering, dates back to George Green [93], who used it as an auxiliary tool to determine electric fields against an electrostatic background. The main advantage of this approach is that it allows one to establish a closed form dependence of unknown quantities against all internal and external parameters of the system, thus making the linear analysis much easier.

In order to illustrate the use of the Green's function in the analysis of linear models, let the mathematical model of a dynamic system be described by the following abstract differential equation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) \quad \text { in } \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+}, \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\Omega \subseteq \mathbb{R}^{n}$ is the domain of the system ${ }^{5}, \mathcal{D}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{F}$ is a linear differential operator, and the vector $f: \mathbb{R}^{n} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ represents the resultant of all external signals or influences interacting with the system.

[^4]
## 1. INTRODUCTION

Boundary and initial conditions are also assumed to be prescribed ${ }^{6}$ :

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{b}(t) \text { in } \partial \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+},  \tag{1.8}\\
& \mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{x}) \text { in } \Omega \times\{0\} . \tag{1.9}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $\mathcal{B}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{U}_{b}$ and $\mathcal{I}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ are linear operators, and the vector-functions $\boldsymbol{w}_{b}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}: \mathbb{R}^{n} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ are given. It is assumed that $\boldsymbol{f}, \boldsymbol{w}_{b}$, and $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}$ satisfy the existence and uniqueness conditions of a solution $\boldsymbol{w} \in \mathbf{W}$.

In particular problems, it is often easier to operate with homogeneous initial and boundary conditions. It turns out that by introducing a new state function, it is always possible to include the boundary and initial data into the right-hand side of (1.7). To this end distributions are usually involved as well as the filtering property of the Dirac delta function, provided that

$$
\int_{\Omega} \mathcal{B}^{e}[\boldsymbol{w}](\boldsymbol{x}, t) \boldsymbol{\delta}\left(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{x}_{b}\right) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{x}=\boldsymbol{w}_{b}(t) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \text {for all } \boldsymbol{x}_{b} \in \partial \Omega
$$

and

$$
\int_{0}^{t} \mathcal{I}^{e}[\boldsymbol{w}](\boldsymbol{x}, t) \delta(t) \mathrm{d} t=\boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{x}) \quad \text { in } \Omega
$$

are taken into account. Here $\mathcal{B}^{e}[\cdot]$ and $\mathcal{I}^{e}[\cdot]$ are the extensions of the operators $\mathcal{B}[\cdot]$ and $\mathcal{I}[\cdot]$ to $\bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}$, respectively.

Then, as a result of algebraic transformations, (1.7)-(1.9) are reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]=\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}, t)+\boldsymbol{g}_{b}\left(\boldsymbol{w}_{b}\right)+\boldsymbol{g}_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{w}_{0}\right) \quad \text { in } \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+}, \tag{1.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^5]\[

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathcal{B}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]=\mathbf{0} \text { in } \partial \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+}  \tag{1.11}\\
\mathcal{I}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]=\mathbf{0} \text { in } \Omega \times\{0\}, \tag{1.12}
\end{gather*}
$$
\]

where $\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}$ is the new state function.
The explicit form of $\boldsymbol{g}_{b}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{i}$ depends on the form of the operators $\mathcal{D}, \mathcal{B}$, and $\mathcal{I}$, and contains the Dirac function and its derivatives ${ }^{7}$. Since these operators are linear, then $\boldsymbol{g}_{b}$ is linear in $\boldsymbol{w}_{b}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{i}$ is linear in $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}$, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{g}_{b}\left(\boldsymbol{w}_{b}\right)=\boldsymbol{g}_{b 0}(\boldsymbol{x}) \boldsymbol{w}_{b}(t), \quad \boldsymbol{g}_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{w}_{0}\right)=\boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t) \boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{x}) \tag{1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Precisely, they are the functions $\boldsymbol{g}_{b 0}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}$ that contain the Dirac function and its derivatives.

Then, the solution to the initial-boundary value problem

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathcal{D}[\boldsymbol{G}]=\boldsymbol{\delta}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{\xi}) \delta(t-\tau) \text { in } \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+},  \tag{1.14}\\
\mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{G}]=\mathbf{0} \text { in } \partial \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+},  \tag{1.15}\\
\mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{G}]=\mathbf{0} \text { in } \Omega \times\{0\}, \tag{1.16}
\end{gather*}
$$

$\boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau)$, is called the Green's function of the system (1.10)-(1.12).
There are different approaches for the derivation of the general solution of (1.14)-(1.16). In general, any $\boldsymbol{G}$ satisfying (1.14)-(1.16) is a distribution rather than a proper function. That is the main reason that $\boldsymbol{G}$ is usually sought by methods suitable for distributions. Among such methods are the method of integral transforms, the Fourier method of variable separation, the method of eigenvalue expansion, etc. The

[^6]
## 1. INTRODUCTION

choice of a particular method depends on, first of all, the domain $\Omega$. Particularly, when $\Omega$ is semi-infinite, then the Laplace integral transform is usually used, while if it is infinite, the Fourier integral transform is more suitable. The separation of variables and the eigenvalue expansion are often applied when $\Omega$ is finite. In some exceptional cases a special combination of those methods needs to be applied. For instance, in dynamic problems the Laplace integral transform is applied with respect to the time variable $t$. Further, if $\Omega$ is bounded, then the method of variables separation can be involved. Otherwise, Fourier transform can be applied. For a more thorough introduction into existing methods for the derivation of the Green's function, see [85, 88].

Assuming that the generalized solution of (1.14)-(1.16) is somehow found, then the general solution of (1.10)-(1.12) is given by the Green's representation formula

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{g}_{b}\left(\boldsymbol{w}_{b}(\tau)\right) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{g}_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{\xi})\right) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
\end{aligned}
$$

or, taking (1.13) into account,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{g}_{b 0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \boldsymbol{w}_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega}^{\boldsymbol{G}}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(\tau) \boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, the solution to (1.10)-(1.12) is expressed in terms of the righthand side, boundary and initial data, and other system characteristics included in $\boldsymbol{G}$. It is now evident that, by means of the Green's representation formula, linear analysis becomes much simpler for different expressions of external signals and influences, as well as boundary and initial data. Moreover, this formula allows the exploration of new features that may occur in the case of specific combinations of system data.

Since the functions $\boldsymbol{g}_{b 0}$ and $\boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}$ are expressed in terms of distributions, then the integrals

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, t, \tau) & =\int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{g}_{b 0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \\
\boldsymbol{G}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \tag{1.17}
\end{align*}
$$

are eventually expressed in terms of the Green's function and its derivatives ${ }^{8}$, and the form of the Green's formula

$$
\begin{align*}
\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{w}_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+  \tag{1.18}\\
& +\int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t) \boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
\end{align*}
$$

becomes more convenient.
Note that the vector-functions $\boldsymbol{f}, \boldsymbol{w}_{b}$, and $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}$ must be chosen in such a way that the integrals in (1.18) are well defined, so that the solution $\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}} \in \mathbf{W}$ exists and is unique.

[^7]
## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.2.1 Particular Cases

In order to be more illustrative, consider some particular cases ${ }^{9}$. First, consider the one-dimensional ordinary differential equation

$$
\frac{d^{2} x}{d t^{2}}+k^{2} \cdot x=0 \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

describing the free vibrations of a spring with stiffness $c=\frac{k^{2}}{m}$ and mass $m$ in linear approximation.

Assume that at the initial instant $t=0$, the following Cauchy conditions are given:

$$
x(0)=x_{0}, \quad \dot{x}(0)=\left.\frac{d x}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=x_{0}^{1}
$$

where $x_{0}$ and $x_{0}^{1}$ are given constants. Then, it is shown that the new state function

$$
\tilde{x}(t)=\theta(t-0) x(t)
$$

satisfies the non-homogeneous equation

$$
\frac{d^{2} \tilde{x}}{d t^{2}}+k^{2} \cdot \tilde{x}=x_{0} \dot{\delta}(t)+x_{0}^{1} \delta(t),
$$

with homogeneous Cauchy conditions

$$
\tilde{x}(0)=0, \quad \dot{\tilde{x}}(0)=0 .
$$

[^8]
## 1. INTRODUCTION

Here the dot above the Dirac function means the first derivative in terms of distributions, and $t-0$ in the argument of the Heaviside function denotes that the point $t=0$ is approached from the right. It is evident that in the sense of distributions

$$
\dot{\theta}(t-0)=\delta(t) .
$$

After applying the Laplace transform, the Green's function, i.e., the solution of

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+k^{2} \cdot G=\delta(t-\tau) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}, \\
G(0, \tau)=0,\left.\quad \frac{d G}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=0 \text { for all } \tau \in \mathbb{R}^{+}
\end{gathered}
$$

is derived as [78]

$$
G(t, \tau)=\frac{1}{k} \theta(t-\tau) \sin [k(t-\tau)] .
$$

Note that this formula makes sense even in the limiting case $k \rightarrow 0$. Therefore, the transformation (1.13) becomes

$$
\boldsymbol{g}_{i}\left(x_{0}, x_{0}^{1}\right)=\boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t)\binom{x_{0}}{x_{0}^{1}} \quad \text { with } \boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\dot{\delta}(t) & 0 \\
0 & \delta(t)
\end{array}\right),
$$

and (1.17) results in

$$
\begin{gathered}
G_{i 11}(t)=\int_{0}^{t} G(t, \tau) \dot{\delta}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=-\left.\frac{\partial G(t, \tau)}{\partial \tau}\right|_{\tau=0}= \\
=\theta(t-0) \cos (k t) \\
G_{i 22}(t)=\int_{0}^{t} G(t, \tau) \delta(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=G(t, 0)=\frac{1}{k} \theta(t-0) \sin (k t) .
\end{gathered}
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Here it is taken into account that for any differentiable function $f$

$$
\int_{0}^{t} f(t-\tau) \dot{\delta}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=-\left.\frac{\partial f(t-\tau)}{\partial \tau}\right|_{\tau=0}
$$

and that in the sense of distributions

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial G(t, \tau)}{\partial \tau} & =-\frac{1}{k} \delta(t-\tau) \sin [k(t-\tau)]-\theta(t-\tau) \cos [k(t-\tau)]= \\
& =-\theta(t-\tau) \cos [k(t-\tau)]
\end{aligned}
$$

Then,

$$
\tilde{x}(t)=x_{0} G_{i 11}(t)+x_{0}^{1} G_{i 22}(t)=\theta(t-0)\left[x_{0} \cos (k t)+\frac{x_{0}^{1}}{k} \sin (k t)\right],
$$

so that

$$
x(t)=x_{0} \cos (k t)+\frac{x_{0}^{1}}{k} \sin (k t) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

Consider the one-dimensional homogeneous heat equation in an infinite domain

$$
\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t}=d \frac{\partial^{2} \Theta}{\partial x^{2}} \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

with the initial condition

$$
\Theta(x, 0)=\Theta_{0}(x) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}
$$

Here $\Theta$ describes the temperature distribution in an infinite, sufficiently thin rod, the material of which has the thermal diffusivity of $d$, and $\Theta_{0}$ is a prescribed function.

It is obvious that in this case the new state function

$$
\tilde{\Theta}(x, t)=\theta(t-0) \Theta(x, t)
$$

reduces the above Cauchy problem to the following one:

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{\partial \tilde{\Theta}}{\partial t}=d \frac{\partial^{2} \tilde{\Theta}}{\partial x^{2}}+\Theta_{0}(x) \delta(t) \\
\tilde{\Theta}(x, 0)=0
\end{gathered}
$$

The corresponding Green's function is the solution of the Cauchy problem

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{\partial G}{\partial t}=d \frac{\partial^{2} G}{\partial x^{2}}+\delta(x-\xi) \delta(t-\tau) \text { in } \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \\
G=0 \text { in } \mathbb{R}
\end{gathered}
$$

The problem domain consists of both an infinite piece and a semiinfinite piece. Therefore, the Fourier transform must be applied with respect to $x \in \mathbb{R}$ coordinate, while for the time-variable $t \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$, the Laplace transform is more suitable. Eventually, the Green's function is found to be

$$
G(x, \xi, t, \tau)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d(t-\tau)}} \theta(t-\tau) \exp \left[-\frac{(x-\xi)^{2}}{4 d(t-\tau)}\right]
$$

At this, the transformation (1.13) results in

$$
g_{b}\left(\Theta_{0}\right)=g_{b 0}(t) \Theta_{0}(x) \quad \text { with } \quad g_{b 0}(t)=\delta(t)
$$

and (1.17) provides

$$
G_{i}(x, \xi, t)=G(x, \xi, t, 0)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d t}} \theta(t-0) \exp \left[-\frac{(x-\xi)^{2}}{4 d t}\right]
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Eventually, the general solution reads as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{\Theta}(x, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(x, \xi, t, \tau) \delta(\tau) \Theta_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau= \\
& =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G_{i}(x, \xi, t) \Theta_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi= \\
& =\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d t}} \theta(t-0) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Theta_{0}(\xi) \exp \left[-\frac{(x-\xi)^{2}}{4 d t}\right] \mathrm{d} \xi,
\end{aligned}
$$

so that

$$
\Theta(x, t)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d t}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Theta_{0}(\xi) \exp \left[-\frac{(x-\xi)^{2}}{4 d t}\right] \mathrm{d} \xi \text { in } \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

In the case of a one-dimensional homogeneous wave equation on the semi-axis

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial t^{2}}=c^{2} \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}} \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

where $c$ is the velocity of wave propagation, the boundary and initial conditions

$$
\begin{gathered}
w(0, t)=w_{b}(t) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}, \\
w(x, 0)=w_{0}(x),\left.\quad \frac{\partial w}{\partial t}\right|_{t=0}=w_{0}^{1}(x) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}
\end{gathered}
$$

are included into its right-hand side by the transformation

$$
\tilde{w}(x, t)=\theta(t-0) \theta(x-0) w(x, t) .
$$

As a result, the wave equation transforms into

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} \tilde{w}}{\partial t^{2}}=c^{2} \frac{\partial^{2} \tilde{w}}{\partial x^{2}}-c^{2} w_{b}(t) \delta^{\prime}(x)+\left[w_{0}(x) \dot{\delta}(t)+w_{0}^{1}(x) \delta(t)\right] .
$$

The Green's function is derived by applying the Laplace transform twice:

$$
G(x, \xi, t, \tau)=\frac{1}{2 c} \theta(x-\xi) \theta(t-\tau) \theta(c(t-\tau)-|x-\xi|) .
$$

In this case the transformation (1.13) results in

$$
\begin{gathered}
g_{b}\left(w_{b}\right)=g_{b 0}(x) w_{b}(t) \text { with } g_{b 0}(x)=\delta^{\prime}(x) \\
\boldsymbol{g}_{i}\left(w_{0}, w_{0}^{1}\right)=\boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t)\binom{w_{0}}{w_{0}^{1}} \quad \text { with } \boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\dot{\delta}(t) & 0 \\
0 & \delta(t)
\end{array}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and (1.17) provides

$$
\begin{gathered}
G_{b}(x, \xi, t)=-c^{2} \int_{0}^{\infty} G(x, \xi, t, \tau) \delta^{\prime}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi=\left.c^{2} \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t, \tau)}{\partial \xi}\right|_{\xi=0} \\
G_{i 11}(x, \xi, t)=\int_{0}^{t} G(x, \xi, t, \tau) \delta(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=G(x, \xi, t, 0) \\
G_{i 22}(x, \xi, t)=\int_{0}^{t} G(x, \xi, t, \tau) \dot{\delta}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=-\left.\frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t, \tau)}{\partial \tau}\right|_{\tau=0}
\end{gathered}
$$

Eventually, the solution of the wave equations reads as

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{w}(x, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} G_{b}(x, \xi, t) w_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{\infty}\left[G_{i 11}(x, \xi, t) w_{0}^{1}(\xi)-G_{i 22}(x, \xi, t) w_{0}(\xi)\right] \mathrm{d} \xi
\end{aligned}
$$

Finally, consider the homogeneous two-dimensional plate equation

$$
D \Delta \Delta w+\rho h \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial t^{2}}=0 \quad \text { in } \quad\left[0, l_{1}\right] \times\left[0, l_{2}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

describing free transverse (bending) vibrations of sufficiently thin rectangular plates. Here $\Delta$ is the two-dimensional Laplace operator, $D$ is the bending stiffness, $\rho$ is the material density, and $h$ is the small constant thickness of the plate.

Let the plate be simply supported through all its edges so that the boundary conditions are given as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& w=\frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}}=0 \text { at } x=0, l_{1} \text { in }\left[0, l_{2}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{+}, \\
& w=\frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial y^{2}}=0 \text { at } y=0, l_{2} \text { in }\left[0, l_{1}\right] \times \mathbb{R}^{+} .
\end{aligned}
$$

The following initial conditions are given:

$$
w(x, y, 0)=w_{0}(x, y),\left.\quad \frac{\partial w}{\partial t}\right|_{t=0}=w_{0}^{1}(x, y) \quad \text { in } \quad\left[0, l_{1}\right] \times\left[0, l_{2}\right]
$$

which are included into the right-hand side of the plate equation by the transformation

$$
\tilde{w}(x, y, t)=\theta(t-0) w(x, y, t) .
$$

If the boundary conditions were not homogeneous, then a similar transform must be done with respect to $x$ and $y$ variables. Then, the plate equation transforms into

$$
D \Delta \Delta \tilde{w}+\rho h \frac{\partial^{2} \tilde{w}}{\partial t^{2}}=\rho h\left[w_{0}(x, y) \dot{\delta}(t)+w_{0}^{1}(x, y) \delta(t)\right] .
$$

The boundary conditions preserve their form, and the initial conditions are transformed to

$$
\tilde{w}(x, y, 0)=0,\left.\quad \frac{\partial \tilde{w}}{\partial t}\right|_{t=0}=0 .
$$

In this case, since the plate is finite, the separation of variables is more appropriate, providing

$$
\begin{aligned}
G(x, \xi, y, \eta, t, \tau) & =\frac{8}{\alpha l_{1} l_{2}} \theta(t-\tau) \times \\
& \times \sum_{n, m=1}^{\infty} \varphi_{n}(x) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \phi_{m}(y) \phi_{m}(\eta) \psi_{n m}(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \varphi_{n}(x)= \sin \left(\frac{\pi n}{l_{1}} x\right), \quad \phi_{m}(y)=\sin \left(\frac{\pi m}{l_{2}} y\right) \\
& \psi_{n m}(t)=\exp \left[-\lambda_{m n}(t-\tau)\right] \\
& \lambda_{m n}= \alpha\left[\left(\frac{\pi n}{l_{1}}\right)^{2}+\left(\frac{\pi m}{l_{2}}\right)^{2}\right], \quad \alpha=\sqrt{\frac{D}{\rho h}}
\end{aligned}
$$

The transformation (1.13) then results in

$$
\boldsymbol{g}_{i}\left(w_{0}, w_{0}^{1}\right)=\boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t)\binom{w_{0}}{w_{0}^{1}} \quad \text { with } \quad \boldsymbol{g}_{i 0}(t)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\dot{\delta}(t) & 0 \\
0 & \delta(t)
\end{array}\right)
$$

and (1.17) becomes

$$
\begin{aligned}
G_{i 11}(x, \xi, y, \eta, t) & =\rho h \int_{0}^{t} G(x, \xi, y, \eta, t, \tau) \dot{\delta}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =-\left.\rho h \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, y, \eta, t, \tau)}{\partial \tau}\right|_{\tau=0} \\
G_{i 22}(x, \xi, y, \eta, t) & =\rho h \int_{0}^{t} G(x, \xi, y, \eta, t, \tau) \delta(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =\rho h G(x, \xi, y, \eta, t, 0)
\end{aligned}
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Thus, the general solution is expressed as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\tilde{w}(x, y, t) & =\int_{0}^{l_{1}} \int_{0}^{l_{2}} G_{i 11}(x, \xi, y, \eta, t) w_{0}(\xi, \eta) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \eta+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{l_{1}} \int_{0}^{l_{2}} G_{i 22}(x, \xi, y, \eta, t) w_{0}^{1}(\xi, \eta) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \eta .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 1.3 The Green's Function Method for Nonlinear Systems

As mentioned in the beginning of Section 1.2, linear models provide the simplest constraints, which are appropriate only for basic theoretical analysis. In some cases, even with the inaccuracy of linear models they are still sufficiently useful. However, when a more precise analysis is required, linear models are insufficient and nonlinear models must be used. For example, the Euler-Bernoulli model provides a linear differential equation for analyzing transverse deflections of thin beams, which is valid until the beam is subject to loads causing transverse deflections of infinitesimally small magnitude compared with the thickness of the beam. But, if the acting loads cause deflections comparable with the thickness of the beam, then, for proper analysis, geometrically nonlinear beam theories yielding nonlinear differential equations must be considered.

On the other hand, the higher accuracy provided by using nonlinear models is counterbalanced by a higher computational cost required for their analysis. The continuous development and improvement of efficient numerical schemes, as well as the enormous capability of today's computers, allow the approximation of regular nonlinear differential equations within several minutes. Singularities occurring in the equation or initial and/or boundary conditions, the complexity of the domain, the dimension of the system, etc., of course, can considerably increase the computational cost. However, appropriate modifications in the chosen numerical scheme sometimes allow the problem to be handled within a reasonable amount of time. Nevertheless, if the analysis must be carried out for several model parameters varying in different

## 1. INTRODUCTION

ranges, computations can take much longer.
Similar to the case of linear models, the analysis of nonlinear models can be simplified when the explicit solution of the state constraints are somehow found or the approximation scheme contains semi-analytical steps. However, there is not any systematic approach for exact solutions of nonlinear equations in general. On the other hand, there exist various semi-analytical methods for analyzing specific types of nonlinear models. Because the choice of the method strictly depends on the peculiarities of the problem under consideration, such methods can be efficiently involved for analyzing various specific applied nonlinear models.

Among such methods are the Adomian decomposition method [95, 96], the cell-to-cell mapping method [97], the homotopy analysis method [98, 99], the group-theoretical approach [100, 101], the inverse scattering transform [102], generalized separation of variables [76,103,104], the simplest equation method [105], singularity analysis [106], etc. See also [107] for an inclusive introduction into nonlinear models and [108, 109] for alternative methods for the analysis of nonlinear systems, as well as [110] for a wider review. See also the interesting article [111].

Several previous attempts have been made to extend the concept of the Green's function from linear systems, for which it is initially developed, to nonlinear ones. Some of them are described further in this section. In the majority of case studies of nonlinear models by means of the Green's function method, the solution of the nonlinear state constraints is approximated by the solution of their linearized version (see, for instance, [112-118] and references therein). The disadvantage of this approach is that the linear approximation may not include some essential features of the nonlinear model. Therefore, in general, this
approach is valid only for a very basic analysis. On the other hand, the Adomian decomposition and homotopy analysis methods, for example, involve a special expansion of the nonlinear term (Adomian polynomials), so that the nonlinear problem is split into a set of linear problems. Then, using the Green's formula at each iteration step, eventually a similar representation for the approximate solution of the nonlinear problem can be derived.

Other approaches use the Green's function solution of an auxiliary problem to invert the nonlinear state constraints and derive their integral formulation [119-127]. Extensive numerical analysis in [126] shows the efficiency of the integral formulation approach over the usual discretizing schemes like finite differences. This approach is successfully applied in the study of nonlinear reaction-diffusion processes [128-131]. In some exceptional cases, the Green's function for nonlinear state constraints is also obtained from fully nonlinear considerations [87, 132146].

Without going deep into all the existing approaches, only two of them are described here in detail with specific particular cases.

### 1.3.1 Cacuci's Approach

The first approach, developed by D. G. Cacuci et al. in [147-151], introduces the notion of the so-called dual operator, which is shown to be the generalization of the adjoint operator, defined for linear systems, to the nonlinear case. Then, the dual operator is used to define the so-called advanced and retarded propagators, which are shown to be the generalizations of the Green's function to the nonlinear systems. Finally, those propagators are used to derive a closed-form integral representation for the solution of a nonlinear problem, analogous to

## 1. INTRODUCTION

the Green's representation formula for linear systems.
For a more detailed description of Cacuci's approach, consider the abstract nonlinear differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) \quad \text { in } \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{1.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

subject to the nonlinear boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{b}(t) \quad \text { in } \partial \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{1.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the nonlinear initial conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}) \text { in } \Omega \times\{0\} . \tag{1.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\mathcal{D}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{F}, \mathcal{B}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$, and $\mathcal{I}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ are nonlinear operators ${ }^{10}$ acting on the state vector function ${ }^{11} \boldsymbol{w}: \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$, $\boldsymbol{f}: \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a given vector-function, and $\boldsymbol{w}_{b}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ and $\boldsymbol{w}_{i}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ are the given boundary and initial data.

In the nonlinear case it is also possible to include the boundary and initial data (1.20) and (1.21) into the state equation (1.19) (see Section 1.2 for the linear case). The corresponding transformations are also expressed in terms of the Dirac function and its derivatives, but have a more complicated form compared with the linear case. Following Cacuci, formally denote that inclusion by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]+\boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{B}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]+\boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{I}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]=\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{x}, t)+\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{w}_{b}(t)+\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{w}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}) \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} . \tag{1.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^9]Here $\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}$ is the new state vector satisfying (1.22) and the homogeneous boundary and initial conditions

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{B}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]=\mathbf{0} \text { in } \partial \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+}  \tag{1.23}\\
& \mathcal{I}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]=\mathbf{0} \text { in } \Omega \times\{0\} \tag{1.24}
\end{align*}
$$

Without stopping on the details of the method, let us mention only the final representation formula for the general solution of (1.22)-(1.24), which reads as

$$
\begin{align*}
\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\bar{\Omega}} \boldsymbol{G}(\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}(\boldsymbol{x}, t), \boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau)[\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau)+  \tag{1.25}\\
& \left.+\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{w}_{b}(\tau)+\boldsymbol{\delta} \boldsymbol{w}_{i}(\boldsymbol{\xi})\right] \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{G}$ is the so-called backward propagator defined as the unique solution (in the sense of distributions) of

$$
\left\{\mathcal{D}_{0}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]+\boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{B}_{0}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]+\boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{I}_{0}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}]\right\} \boldsymbol{G}=\boldsymbol{\delta}(\boldsymbol{x}-\boldsymbol{\xi}) \delta(t-\tau) \quad \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

Above,

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{D}_{0}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v}=\int_{0}^{1} \mathcal{D}^{\prime}[\epsilon \tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v} \mathrm{d} \epsilon \\
\boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{B}_{0}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v}=\int_{0}^{1} \boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{B}^{\prime}[\epsilon \tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v} \mathrm{d} \epsilon, \quad \delta \mathcal{I}_{0}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v}=\int_{0}^{1} \boldsymbol{\delta} \mathcal{I}^{\prime}[\epsilon \tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v} \mathrm{d} \epsilon
\end{gathered}
$$

where the prime denotes the Gâteaux derivative defined by

$$
\mathcal{D}^{\prime}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}] \boldsymbol{v}=\left.\frac{d \mathcal{D}[\tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}+\epsilon \boldsymbol{v}]}{d \epsilon}\right|_{\epsilon=0}
$$

It is proved that the representation formula (1.25) is unique. An

## 1. INTRODUCTION

analogous formula holds for the forward propagator denoted by $\boldsymbol{G}^{*}$.

### 1.3.1.1 Particular Case: The Generalized Burgers-Kortewegde Vries Equation

Consider the one-dimensional generalized Burgers-Korteweg-de Vries equation

$$
\frac{\partial w}{\partial t}+\eta \frac{\partial w}{\partial x} w^{p} \frac{\partial w}{\partial x}-\nu \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}}+\alpha \frac{\partial^{3} w}{\partial x^{3}}=0 \text { in }(0,1) \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

where $\eta, \nu$, and $\alpha$ are positive constants, and $p \in \mathbb{N}$. In particular, when $\eta=\nu=0$ and $p=\alpha=1$, the equation is reduced to the Burgers' equation, while when $\eta=\alpha=0$ and $p=\nu=1$, it is reduced to the Korteweg-de Vries equation.

It is assumed that the periodic boundary conditions

$$
w(0, t)=w(1, t)=0,\left.\quad \frac{\partial w}{\partial x}\right|_{x=0,1}=0,\left.\quad \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}}\right|_{x=0,1}=0 \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

are given. The initial state

$$
w(x, 0)=w_{0}(x) \quad \text { in } \quad[0,1]
$$

is also assumed to be given, where $w_{0}$ is a prescribed function.
Then, the Cacuci's approach provides [151]

$$
\begin{aligned}
w(x, t) & =\int_{0}^{1} w_{0}(\xi) G^{*}(\xi, 0, x, t) \mathrm{d} \xi- \\
& -\frac{1}{1+p} \int_{0}^{t} \int_{0}^{1} G_{b}^{*}(\xi, \tau, x, t)\left[\left(w^{0}\right)^{p} w(\xi, \tau)-w^{p+1}(\xi, \tau)\right] \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

where $w^{0} \in L^{2}[0,1]$ is an arbitrary function, and $G^{*}$ is the forward propagator given by

$$
\begin{gathered}
G^{*}(\xi, \tau, x, t)=\theta(t-\tau)\left[1+2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \varphi_{n}(x-\xi, t-\tau)\right] \\
G_{b}^{*}(\xi, \tau, x, t)=\frac{\partial G^{*}(\xi, \tau, x, t)}{\partial \xi} \\
\varphi_{n}(x, t)=\cos \left[2 \pi n\left(x+\left(4 \pi^{2} n^{2} \alpha-\eta-\frac{\left(w^{0}\right)^{2}}{1+p}\right) t\right)\right]
\end{gathered}
$$

It is shown in [150] that this solution is consistent with the exact one, so that the approach is advantageous.

### 1.3.2 Frasca's Approach

The second approach is developed by M. Frasca in $[152,153]$ for specific applications in quantum field theory. This approach formally uses the Green's representation formula for linear equations, i.e., the convolution of the Green's function and the right-hand side, to approximate the solution of a nonlinear problem. At this, the nonlinear Green's function is derived from the corresponding nonlinear equation. To incorporate the approximation error, a scaling factor is introduced into the right-hand side of the equation for the Green's function. Even though the Frasca's approach is developed for a nonlinear differential equation of a particular form, it would be beneficial to explore possibilities of extending this approach for nonlinear equations of other or maybe general forms.

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Consider the second order nonlinear ordinary differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} \boldsymbol{w}}{d t^{2}}+\boldsymbol{N}(\boldsymbol{w}, t)=\boldsymbol{f}(t) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{1.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{w}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is the state vector-function of a dynamic system, $\boldsymbol{N}: \mathbb{R}^{m} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a generic non-linearity, and $\boldsymbol{f}: \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a given vector-function.

For simplicity assume that the homogeneous ${ }^{12}$ Cauchy conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{w}(0)=\mathbf{0},\left.\quad \frac{d \boldsymbol{w}}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=\mathbf{0} \tag{1.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

are given. Then, the general solution of (1.26), (1.27) is approximately given by the Green's representation formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{w}(t) \approx \int_{0}^{t} \boldsymbol{G}(t-\tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{1.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\boldsymbol{G}$ is the formal Green's function of (1.26), (1.27), defined as the fundamental solution of

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d^{2} \boldsymbol{G}}{d t^{2}}+\boldsymbol{N}(\boldsymbol{G}, t)=s \delta(t) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}  \tag{1.29}\\
\left.\boldsymbol{G}\right|_{t=0}=0,\left.\quad \frac{d \boldsymbol{G}}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=0 \tag{1.30}
\end{gather*}
$$

Above $s \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a scaling factor and is chosen to minimize the error of approximation. Corresponding error estimates in the case of particular non-linearities are derived in [153]. See also Paragraph 1.3.2.2 below.

Thus, if $\boldsymbol{N}$ has such a form for which the Cauchy problem (1.29),

[^10](1.30) admits an exact solution, then the solution of (1.26), (1.27) can be approximated by (1.28). Luckily, equations of the form (1.29) are exactly solvable for quite general forms of $\boldsymbol{N}$. For corresponding cases see, for instance, [82, 155-157].

Furthermore, Frasca has shown that (1.28) is the first term in the socalled short time expansion (see [153] for details) of the exact solution of (1.26), (1.27). More specifically,

$$
\boldsymbol{w}(t)=\int_{0}^{t} \boldsymbol{G}(t-\tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_{k} \int_{0}^{t}(t-\tau)^{k} \boldsymbol{G}(t-\tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

where $a_{k}$ are defined by calculating the derivatives

$$
\left.\frac{d^{k} \boldsymbol{w}}{d t^{k}}\right|_{t=0}
$$

The series is truncated once the required accuracy of approximation is achieved.

### 1.3.2.1 Particular Cases

Several particular forms of $\boldsymbol{N}$ admitting explicit an solution of (1.29), (1.30) are considered in this paragraph. Consider for simplicity the one-dimensional case. The exact solution of (1.29) can be obtained, for instance, in the case of a quadratic non-linearity

$$
\begin{equation*}
N(w, t)=a w^{2} \tag{1.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

with constant $0 \neq a \in \mathbb{R}$. Then (1.29) takes the form

$$
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+a G^{2}=s \delta(t) \quad \text { in } \quad \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

the exact solution of which is

$$
\begin{equation*}
G(t)=-\frac{1}{c} \theta(t) \wp\left(c t+c_{1} ; 0, c_{2}\right) . \tag{1.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here,

$$
c=\left(-\frac{a}{6}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}},
$$

$c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ are integration constants determined from the Cauchy conditions (1.30), and $\wp$ is the Weierstrass elliptic function ( $p$-function) defined as

$$
\wp\left(t ; \omega_{1}, \omega_{2}\right)=\frac{1}{t^{2}}+\sum_{n^{2}+m^{2} \neq 0}\left[\frac{1}{\left(t+\omega_{1} m+\omega_{2} n\right)^{2}}-\frac{1}{\left(\omega_{1} m+\omega_{2} n\right)^{2}}\right] .
$$

Note that the Green's function strongly depends on $\operatorname{sign} a$. Indeed, the conditions sign $a<0, c>0$ make $G$ to be a real-valued function. Otherwise, when $\operatorname{sign} a>0$, it is apparent that $G$ becomes a complexvalued function.

It is also possible to derive an exact solution in the case where

$$
N(w, t)=\frac{a}{w}
$$

with constant $0 \neq a \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, $G$ is determined from

$$
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+\frac{a}{G}=s \delta(t) \quad \text { in } \quad \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

the exact solution of which is

$$
G(t)=c_{1} \theta(t) \exp \left[-\varphi^{2}\left(t ; c_{1}, c_{2}\right)\right],
$$

$$
\varphi\left(t ; c_{1}, c_{2}\right)=\operatorname{erf}^{-1}\left[-\sqrt{\frac{2 a}{\pi} c_{1}^{2}\left(t+c_{2}\right)^{2}}\right],
$$

where $\mathrm{erf}^{-1}$ is the inverse function to the Gauss error function, and $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ are integration constants determined from the Cauchy conditions (1.30). The Green's function in this case also depends on $\operatorname{sign} a$.

Another exactly integrable case for (1.26) is provided in the case of cubic non-linearity

$$
N(w, t)=w^{3} .
$$

This case corresponds to the homogeneous Duffing equation without terms characterizing damping and linear stiffness, which describes forced oscillations in physically and geometrically nonlinear media. Then (1.29), (1.30) is reduced to

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+G^{3}=s \delta(t) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \\
\left.G\right|_{t=0}=0,\left.\quad \frac{d G}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=0
\end{gathered}
$$

the exact solution of which reads as [152]

$$
G(t)=2^{\frac{1}{4}} \theta(t) \cdot \operatorname{sn}\left[\frac{t}{2^{\frac{1}{4}}}, i\right] .
$$

Here sn is the Jacobi snoidal function, and $i$ is the imaginary unit. In numerical computations it is usually convenient to use its Fourier series given by

$$
\operatorname{sn}(t, i) \approx \frac{2 \pi}{K} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^{n} \exp \left[-\pi n-\frac{\pi}{2}\right]}{1+\exp [-2 \pi n-\pi]} \sin \left[\frac{2 n+1}{2 K} \pi t\right],
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

where

$$
K=\int_{0}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+\sin ^{2} \tau}} \mathrm{~d} \tau \approx 1.3103
$$

In the case of exponential non-linearity

$$
N(w, t)=\exp w
$$

Eq. (1.29) is reduced to

$$
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+\exp G=s \delta(t) \quad \text { in } \quad \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

Its exact solution is

$$
G(t)=\theta(t) \cdot \ln \left[\frac{1}{2} c_{1}\left(1-\tanh ^{2}\left(\frac{1}{2} \sqrt{c_{1}\left(t+c_{2}\right)^{2}}\right)\right)\right]
$$

Here as well the integration constants $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ must be determined from the Cauchy conditions (1.30).

Another exactly solvable case is provided when

$$
N(w, t)=\sin w
$$

This case corresponds to the reduced sine-Gordon equation, having many applications in various fields of science. Then, (1.29) and (1.30) are reduced to

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+\sin w=s \delta(t) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \\
\left.G\right|_{t=0}=0,\left.\quad \frac{d G}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=0
\end{gathered}
$$

the exact solution of which reads as [152]

$$
G(t)=2 \theta(t) \cdot \mathrm{am}\left[\frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}, \sqrt{2}\right] .
$$

Here am is the Jacobi amplitude function

$$
\operatorname{am}(t, \sqrt{2})=\arcsin [\operatorname{sn}(t, \sqrt{2})] .
$$

To simplify the computations, its Fourier series given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{am}(t, \sqrt{2}) & \approx \frac{(1+i) \pi}{4 K} t+ \\
& +2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \frac{\exp \left[-\frac{(1+i) \pi n}{2}\right]}{1+\exp [-(1+i) \pi n]} \sin \left[\frac{(1+i) \pi n}{2 K} t\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

is used.
It is noteworthy that in the case of non-linearity

$$
N(w, t)=f(w)\left(\frac{d w}{d t}\right)^{3}
$$

where $f$ is any strictly positive (strictly negative), twice integrable function, the Green's function is found to be [158]

$$
G(t)=\theta(t)\left[\int_{0}^{w}\left(c_{2}+\int_{0}^{z} f(w) \mathrm{d} w\right) \mathrm{d} z\right]^{-1}\left(t+c_{1}\right) .
$$

Here the superscript -1 means the inverse function, and $c_{1}$ and $c_{2}$ are integration constants. In particular, when

$$
f(w)=w^{3},
$$

## 1. INTRODUCTION

then

$$
G(t)=\theta(t) \cdot \frac{t+c_{2}-c_{1} W\left(\varphi\left(t ; c_{1}, c_{2}\right)\right)}{c_{1}}
$$

where $W$ is the Lambert function and

$$
\varphi\left(t ; c_{1}, c_{2}\right)=\frac{1}{c_{1}} \exp \left[\frac{t+c_{2}}{c_{1}}\right]
$$

Note that the equation (1.26) is a coordinate reduced version of various applied partial differential equations, describing, as a rule, nonlinear vibrations in solids or fluids $[154]^{13}$. Indeed, consider, for instance, the one-dimensional nonlinear wave equation

$$
\frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial t^{2}}=\alpha \frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\exp [\lambda x] \frac{\partial w}{\partial x}\right]+N(w)
$$

with generic nonlinear function $N$. Using the method of generalized variable separation and denoting by

$$
\chi^{2}=a_{1}\left[\frac{\exp [-\lambda x]}{\alpha \lambda^{2}}-\frac{\left(t+a_{2}\right)^{2}}{4}\right]
$$

where $a_{1}$ and $a_{2}$ are arbitrary constants, the wave equation is reduced to the nonlinear ordinary differential equation [103]

$$
\frac{d^{2} w}{d \chi^{2}}+\frac{4}{c_{1}} N(w)=0
$$

Thus, using the explicit solutions given in the handbooks [75, 76], solutions of the corresponding nonlinear partial differential equations

[^11]can also be approximated by (1.28).

### 1.3.2.2 Numerical Error of Frasca's Approximation

In order to trust the validity of the approximation (1.28), comparisons between approximate and exact solutions are carried out for different right-hand sides $f$. For simplicity, consider the one-dimensional case. Let, for instance, the non-linearity be given by (1.31) with $a=1$. Then, the Green's function is given by (1.32).

A slight modification in the approximation scheme is done by introducing two scaling parameters $s_{1}$ and $s_{2}$, where $s_{1}$ enters into the Green's function equation:

$$
\frac{d^{2} G}{d t^{2}}+G^{2}=s_{1} \delta(t),
$$

while $s_{2}$ regulates the approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(t) \approx s_{2} \int_{0}^{t} G(t-\tau) f(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \tag{1.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

To measure the error of approximation, the logarithmic error

$$
\operatorname{Er}(t)=\log _{10}\left|w_{\text {app }}(t)-w_{\text {exact }}(t)\right|
$$

is computed, evaluating the difference between the numerical solution $w_{\text {app }}$ and the exact solution $w_{\text {exact }}$ in degrees of 10 .

Fig. 1.2 expresses the behaviour of Er against $t \in[0,1]$ when $f(t)=$ $\delta(t)$. As expected, the approximation error is quite small. More specifically, $\operatorname{Er} \leq-6.55$. Less accurate but still efficient approximation is provided in the case when $f(t)=\theta(t)$. Fig. 1.3 shows that $\operatorname{Er} \leq-3.5$. For harmonic perturbations the error is still small: $\operatorname{Er} \leq-4.25$ (see

## 1. INTRODUCTION

Fig. 1.4). Further, for exponential and polynomial sources, the estimate $\mathrm{Er} \leq-2.5$ is observed (see Fig. 1.5). For a logarithmic source, $\mathrm{Er} \leq-4$ (see Fig. 1.6). The efficiency of (1.33) is also observed for other types of non-linearities. The error of approximation by (1.28) in the case of (1.31) is shown in Tab. 1.1 for different right-hand sides $f$.

| $f(t)$ | $\min \operatorname{Er}$ | $\max \operatorname{Er}$ | $s_{1}$ | $s_{2}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\delta(t)$ | -6.63 | -6.55 | 2 | 1 |
| $\theta(t)$ | -8 | -3.5 | 2.1475 | 0.93107 |
| $\sin (t)$ | -9.5 | -4.25 | 2.7807 | 0.72126 |
| $\exp (t)$ | -6 | -2.5 | 197.1 | 0.01 |
| $1+t+t^{2}+t^{3}$ | -6.1 | -2.5 | 27.5783 | 0.07149 |
| $\ln (1+t)$ | -9.1 | -4 | 2.5925 | 0.7743 |

Table 1.1: Minimal and maximal logarithmic errors of approximation for various source functions: quadratic potential

The approximation error can be reduced further by involving proceeding terms of the short time expansion above.


Figure 1.2: Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and Er (right) for $f(t)=\delta(t)$


Figure 1.3: Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\theta(t)$

## 1. INTRODUCTION



Figure 1.4: Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\sin (t)$


Figure 1.5: Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=\exp (t)$


Figure 1.6: Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and $\operatorname{Er}$ (right) for $f(t)=1+t+t^{2}+t^{3}$


Figure 1.7: Discrete plot of exact and approximate solutions (left) and Er (right) for $f(t)=\ln (1+t)$

### 1.4 The Green's Function Method in Controllability Analysis

Several attempts to invoke the Green's function method exist in the controllability analysis of linear dynamic systems (see, for instance, [159-175] and references therein). Recently, a new attempt which is also valid in the case of nonlinear systems has been reported in $[94,176]$ by the authors of the present book. The main idea of the approach is to use the Green's function to establish a link between the residue and the control function.

The algorithm can be split into several simple steps.
i) First, the solution of the state constraints is represented by the Green's formula (see (1.18) and (1.25)) and is evaluated at the terminal instant $t=T$, at which the controllability of the system is required.
ii) Second, the evaluated expression is substituted into the residue (1.1), making the dependence $\mathcal{R}_{T}=\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})$ explicit ${ }^{14}$.
iii) Eventually, one of the methods described in Subsection 1.1.5 can be utilized to satisfy (1.2) or (1.3) and to represent the resolving controls explicitly.

It is noteworthy that in handbooks $[75,76,82]$ and in other references containing exact solutions of nonlinear differential equations, a lot of nonlinear equations are solved either in parametric form or implicitly. It is strongly believed that a similar technique can be developed in

[^12]that case when the Green's formula in the first step above is replaced by another type of explicit solution.

Among the advantages of the method is that it addresses the two main challenges mentioned in Section 1.1 and therefore it can be efficiently applied for either exact or approximate controllability analyses. Thanks to the existing extensions of the Green's function for nonlinear equations, dynamic systems with both linear and nonlinear state equations can be studied. On the other hand, because of some algebraic and geometric complexities, the determination of the Green's function even for some linear systems can be a difficult task. It is also an advantage of the approach that it can still be utilized in approximate controllability analysis in cases when only the upper bounds of the Green's function are able to be obtained. For relevant works refer to [177-188] and references therein.

The case studies carried out in Chapters 2 and 3 indicate that the approach is very efficient for systems with variable characteristics, localized controls, unbounded domains, uncertainties, higher dimensions, and generic non-linearities. Moreover, the approach is still applicable in cases when the state nonlinear equation is exactly linearizable. In such cases the linearizing transformation provides a nonlinear relation between the solution of the nonlinear equation and the Green's function of the linearized equation. At this, the controllability analysis is quite straightforward.

The approach also has several drawbacks. In the case when the exact controllability is studied and the residue has the simplest form (1.1), the derivation of restrictions on the control is quite straightforward. However, when the residue has a complicated form, the derivation of restrictions themselves can be complicated. When approximate

## 1. INTRODUCTION

controllability is studied, the approach provides conditions which are merely sufficient. This means that if those conditions are not satisfied on the set of admissible controls, the residue must be implemented and (1.3) must be checked directly. For residues with complicated forms that procedure may exhibit a high computational cost.

Despite the existence of earlier attempts, this approach is original and distinctive because of its usefulness for the establishment of approximate controllability, as well as for the ability to analyze the controllability of nonlinear systems.

## 2

## Linear Systems

This chapter is devoted to specific applications of the approach proposed in Section 1.4 for linear systems. Even though linear models generally describe real-life objects poorly, their mathematical models consist of simpler (linear) relations. Mathematical techniques of linear analysis are well-developed and are easy to apply even in the case of complicated coupled systems, which makes the study of control problems for linear systems easier.

This chapter is organized as follows. The general problem for a system of abstract differential equations is described in Section 2.1 and the resolving system in the general case is obtained in Section 2.2. Some particular cases are considered in Subsections 2.2.1 and 2.2.2, and resolving equations for the exact and approximate controllability are respectively derived. Section 2.3 discusses several special types of resolving control regimes for exact and approximate controllability analysis. Some particular cases are considered in Section 2.4.

### 2.1 Problem Statement

In what follows, the simplest problem of control theory is considered. The system under consideration is a system with the controlled state $\boldsymbol{w}: \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ governed by linear state constraints ${ }^{1}$, an initial state $\boldsymbol{w}_{0}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$, and a desired terminal state $\boldsymbol{w}_{T}: \Omega \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$. The control time $T>0$ and the set of admissible controls $\mathcal{U}$ are prescribed. The problem is to figure out whether the system is exactly or approximately controllable by means of admissible controls.

Let the state of the system be described by the linear differential equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{D}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, t) \quad \text { in } \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} . \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\mathcal{D}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{F}$ is the state operator, and $f: \mathcal{U} \times \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow$ $\mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a given vector-function. It is assumed that $f \in \mathbf{F}$ satisfies the existence and uniqueness conditions of the solution of (2.1) in $\mathbf{W}$ under the boundary and initial conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{u}_{b}(t) \quad \text { in } \quad \partial \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+}, \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{x}) \text { in } \Omega \times\{0\} \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

respectively. Above, $\mathcal{B}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \mathbf{U}_{b}$ and $\mathcal{I}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ are linear operators.

Either $\boldsymbol{u}$ or $\boldsymbol{u}_{b}$ can be considered as a control function ${ }^{2}$. Then the

[^13]problem is mathematically formulated as follows: find such an admissible control $\boldsymbol{u}$ or $\boldsymbol{u}_{b}$ that, at the given instant $T>0$, the following terminal condition is provided:
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \quad \text { in } \Omega \times\{T\} . \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

Here $\mathcal{T}: \mathbf{W} \rightarrow \overline{\mathbf{W}}$ is a linear operator as well. The choice of $\mathcal{T}[\cdot]$ strongly depends on the specific requirements imposed by the study. More often the case when

$$
\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}](\boldsymbol{x})=\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{x}, T) \text { in } \Omega
$$

is considered.
Remark 2.1. As it is mentioned in Remark 1.1, since the system (2.1)-(2.3) is linear, without a loss of generality the equivalent problem of providing the equilibrium terminal state, i.e., $\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \equiv 0$, can be considered.

Then, the residue between the required state and the state implemented at $t=T$ by a choice of an admissible control reads as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right)=\left\|\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

The problem can now be reformulated as follows: figure out whether there exists a $\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}$ (or $\boldsymbol{u}_{b} \in \mathcal{U}$ ) such that the residue (2.5) satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right)=0, \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, if it is not the case,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right) \leq \varepsilon, \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

with a given precision $\varepsilon>0$.
For a time-continuous transition of the state function, the consistency between the boundary, initial, and terminal data is required ${ }^{3}$. In terms of (2.2)-(2.4), the consistency implies the following restrictions on the boundary control:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathcal{B}[\mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{w}]]=\mathcal{B}\left[\boldsymbol{w}_{0}\right]=\boldsymbol{u}_{b}(0), \\
& \mathcal{I}[\mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{w}]]=\mathcal{I}\left[\boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right]=\left.\boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{x})\right|_{\boldsymbol{x} \in \partial \Omega},  \tag{2.8}\\
& \mathcal{B}[\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]]=\mathcal{B}\left[\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right]=\boldsymbol{u}_{b}(T), \\
& \mathcal{T}[\mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{w}]]=\mathcal{T}\left[\boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right]=\left.\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right|_{\boldsymbol{x} \in \partial \Omega} .
\end{align*}
$$

Let the set of admissible controls be of the form

$$
\mathcal{U}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathbf{U},|\boldsymbol{u}| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(\boldsymbol{u}) \subseteq[0, T]\}
$$

with prescribed $\epsilon>0$. In the case of boundary control, the space $\mathbf{U}$ must be substituted by $\mathbf{U}_{b}$, and $\mathcal{U}$ must be complemented by (2.8).

[^14]
### 2.2 Resolving System

The second approach described in Subsection 1.1.5 is applied in this section for the derivation of constraints on admissible controls ensuring exact or approximate controllability.

Assume for simplicity that

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{B}[\boldsymbol{w}](t)=\left.\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{x}, t)\right|_{\boldsymbol{x} \in \partial \Omega}, \quad \mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{w}](\boldsymbol{x})=\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{x}, 0), \\
\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}](\boldsymbol{x})=\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{x}, T) .
\end{gathered}
$$

Then, the solution of (2.1)-(2.3) can be represented as

$$
\begin{array}{rlr}
\boldsymbol{w}(\boldsymbol{x}, t) & =\int_{0}^{t} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, t, \tau) \boldsymbol{u}_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+  \tag{2.9}\\
& +\int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, t) \boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} & \text { in } \bar{\Omega} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
\end{array}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{G}$ is the Green's function of (2.1)-(2.3), and $\boldsymbol{G}_{b}$ and $\boldsymbol{G}_{i}$ are defined by (1.17). Evaluating the state function (2.9) at $t=T$ and substituting into the residue (2.5), the following is obtained

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right) & =\| \int_{0}^{T} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, T, \tau) \boldsymbol{u}_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+  \tag{2.10}\\
& +\int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, T) \boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi}-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x}) \|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}
\end{align*}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

Then, the exact controllability of (2.1)-(2.3), i.e., the equality (2.5), is equivalent to

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{0}^{T} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& \quad+\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, T, \tau) \boldsymbol{u}_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=\boldsymbol{M}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x}) \text { a.e. in } \bar{\Omega} \tag{2.11}
\end{align*}
$$

where ${ }^{4}$

$$
\boldsymbol{M}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})=\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})-\int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}_{i}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, T) \boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{\xi}) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi}
$$

which provides a system of constraints on admissible controls. Therefore, the full set of resolving controls is defined by

$$
\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}, \quad \text { (2.11) }\} .
$$

Consider now the approximate controllability of (2.1)-(2.3). By virtue of the Minkowski inequality, the estimate for the residue (2.10)

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right) \leq \mathcal{R}_{T 0}+\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right)+\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(\boldsymbol{u})
$$

holds uniformly with

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{R}_{T 0}=\left\|\boldsymbol{M}_{T}\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}, \\
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right)=\left\|\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, T, \tau) \boldsymbol{u}_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}, \\
\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(\boldsymbol{u})=\left\|\int_{0}^{T} \int_{\Omega} \boldsymbol{G}(\boldsymbol{x}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{\xi}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\xi} \mathrm{~d} \tau\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} .
\end{gathered}
$$

[^15]Thus, the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T 0}+\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right)+\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(\boldsymbol{u}) \leq \varepsilon \text { on } \mathcal{U} \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

will be sufficient for the approximate controllability. Being merely a sufficient condition, the inequality (2.12) is easier to verify compared with the direct evaluation and verification of the more general criterion (2.7).

A weaker, but more easily verifiable criterion can be obtained, taking into account that for the given initial and terminal data, $\mathcal{R}_{T 0}$ is fixed. Further, if the control is carried out only by the boundary function $\boldsymbol{u}_{b}$, then $\mathcal{R}_{T 2}$ is also fixed. Furthermore, by virtue of the obvious estimate

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{b}\right) \leq \int_{0}^{T}\left\|\boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, T, \tau)\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}\left|\boldsymbol{u}_{b}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau \leq \epsilon \gamma_{T}
$$

where

$$
\gamma_{T}=\int_{0}^{T}\left\|\boldsymbol{G}_{b}(\boldsymbol{x}, T, \tau)\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T 0}+\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(\boldsymbol{u})+\epsilon \gamma_{T} \leq \varepsilon \tag{2.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

will be sufficient for approximate controllability of the system as well. Therefore, admissible controls

$$
\boldsymbol{u}_{b} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}, \quad|\boldsymbol{u}| \leq \tilde{\epsilon}_{T}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T} \leq \frac{\varepsilon-\mathcal{R}_{T 0}-\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(\boldsymbol{u})}{\gamma_{T}} \tag{2.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

ensure the approximate controllability of (2.1)-(2.3) as soon as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varepsilon-\mathcal{R}_{T 0}-\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(\boldsymbol{u}) \geq 0 \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

A similar estimate can be obtained in the case when a distributed control with $\boldsymbol{u}$ is considered.

However, it might be the case that within a reasonable range of characteristics of a particular system, the inequality (2.15) does not hold, leading to

$$
\tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\varnothing .
$$

In such cases, the inequality (2.12) must be evaluated and verified. If for given data (2.12) does not hold as well, then, for a proper approximate controllability analysis, (2.7) with (2.10) must be verified directly.

As with (2.12), the condition (2.13) is also merely sufficient, providing restrictions on the initial and terminal states, right-hand side, control time, and other system characteristics included in the expression of $\boldsymbol{G}$. Therefore, before involving any procedure for providing (2.7), it would be reasonable to verify (2.13) first. Note that since $\mathcal{R}_{T 0}$ is determined by means of the initial and terminal data, while $\mathcal{R}_{T 2}$ is evaluated by means of the right-hand side, (2.15) can be in principle provided by a specific choice of the given data. Therefore, the value of $\tilde{\epsilon}$ can be regulated in a desired range by varying the value of $\gamma_{T}$.

The consistency of the boundary and initial and terminal data (cf. (2.8)) provides the following discrete constraints on the boundary control:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{u}_{b}(0)=\left.\boldsymbol{w}_{0}(\boldsymbol{x})\right|_{\partial \Omega}, \quad \boldsymbol{u}_{b}(T)=\left.\boldsymbol{w}_{T}(\boldsymbol{x})\right|_{\partial \Omega}, \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

by which $\mathcal{U}$ must be complemented.

### 2.2.1 Particular Cases: Exact Controllability

In the general case the resolving system (2.11) is a fully coupled system of equations ${ }^{5}$ with respect to the control function. Therefore, the explicit determination of the resolving controls can be complicated. However, in some particular cases it is possible to reduce the complexity of the system.

In the one-dimensional case let $\Omega=(a, b), a<b \in \mathbb{R}$. Then, (2.11) takes the form

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau) f(u, \xi, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau+  \tag{2.17}\\
& +\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, T, \tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=M_{T}(x) \\
& \text { a.e. in }[a, b],
\end{align*}
$$

where

$$
M_{T}(x)=w_{T}(x)-\int_{a}^{b} G_{i}(x, \xi, T) w_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi
$$

and $G_{i}$ and $G_{b}$ are the one-dimensional analogues of (1.17).
When the control is carried out merely via the boundary function $u_{b}$ acting at $x=a$, i.e., when

$$
w(a, t)=u_{b}(t), \quad w(b, t) \equiv 0 \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+},
$$

the resolving equation (2.17) is reduced to the linear constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, T, \tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=M_{T b}(x) \text { a.e. in }[a, b] \tag{2.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

[^16]
## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

where

$$
M_{T b}(x)=M_{T}(x)-\int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau) f(u, \xi, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau
$$

The compatibility conditions between the boundary, initial, and terminal data are supposed to be satisfied. Then, the set of admissible controls must be complimented by the constraints

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{b}(0)=w_{0}(a), \quad u_{b}(T)=w_{T}(a) \tag{2.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

reduced from (2.16). Thus,

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{u \in \mathbf{U}_{b},|u| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq[0, T],(2.19)\right\}
$$

In this case, the set of resolving controls is

$$
\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}=\{u \in \mathcal{U},(2.18)\}
$$

On the other hand, in the case of distributed control, the resolving equation (2.17) is reduced to the following nonlinear constraint:

$$
\begin{array}{r}
\int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau) f(u, \xi, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau=M_{T d}(x)  \tag{2.20}\\
\text { a.e. in }[a, b],
\end{array}
$$

where

$$
M_{T d}(x)=M_{T}(x)-\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, T, \tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

The exact solvability of (2.20) strongly depends on the dependence of
$f$ on $u$. Particularly, when $f$ is linear in $u$, i.e., if, for given functions $f_{0}$ and $f_{1}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
f(u, x, t)=f_{0}(x, t) u(t)+f_{1}(x, t), \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

then (2.20) results in the linear constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} G_{0}(x, T, \tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=M_{T d 1}(x) \quad \text { a.e. in } \quad[a, b], \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
G_{0}(x, T, \tau)=\int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau) f_{0}(\xi, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi
$$

and

$$
M_{T d 1}(x)=M_{T d}(x)-\int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau) f_{1}(\xi, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau
$$

The functions $f_{0}$ and $f_{1}$ must be chosen in such a way that the integrals in $G_{0}$ and $M_{T d 1}$ make sense, and therefore (2.22) is well defined.

In cases when the dependence of $f$ on $u$ is nonlinear, it is hardly possible to solve ( 2.20 ) exactly. Therefore, numerical methods are usually involved.

### 2.2.2 Particular Cases: Approximate Controllability

Restrict the consideration to the one-dimensional case. Since the system is linear, without any loss of generality, let the aim of the control be the transmitting of the system to rest in a given $T$, i.e., providing $\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \equiv 0$ by a specific choice of admissible boundary controls. Assume,

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

in addition, that

$$
\left|w_{0}\right| \leq \alpha \text { in }[a, b]
$$

and

$$
|f| \leq \beta \quad \text { in } \mathcal{U} \times[a, b] \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

hold uniformly. Then, introducing the notations

$$
g_{i}(\xi, T)=\left\|G_{i}(x, \xi, T)\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}, \quad g(\xi, T, \tau)=\|G(x, \xi, T, \tau)\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}},
$$

it is then easy to obtain the following estimates according to the definition of the norm:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R}_{T 0} & =\left\|\int_{a}^{b} G_{i}(x, \xi, T) w_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{W}}} \leq \\
& \leq \int_{a}^{b}\left\|G_{i}(x, \xi, T)\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}\left|w_{0}(\xi)\right| \mathrm{d} \xi= \\
& =\int_{a}^{b} g_{i}(\xi, T)\left|w_{0}(\xi)\right| \mathrm{d} \xi \leq \alpha \int_{a}^{b} g_{i}(\xi, T) \mathrm{d} \xi, \\
\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(u) & =\left\|\int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau) f(u, \xi, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau\right\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} \leq \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b}\|G(x, \xi, T, \tau)\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}|f(u, \xi, \tau)| \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau \leq \\
& \leq \beta \int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} g(\xi, T, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau .
\end{aligned}
$$

It is proved that, in general, $g_{i}$ and $g$ are at least integrable [83], i.e.,

$$
\alpha_{T 0}:=\int_{a}^{b} g_{i}(\xi, T) \mathrm{d} \xi<\infty,
$$

and

$$
\beta_{T 0}:=\int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} g(\xi, T, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau<\infty
$$

providing

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T 0} \leq \alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}, \quad \mathcal{R}_{T 2}(u) \leq \beta \cdot \beta_{T 0} .
$$

On the other hand, as it has already been established in the beginning of Section 2.2,

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(u_{b}\right) \leq \epsilon \cdot \gamma_{T} \text { on } \mathcal{U},
$$

therefore for the approximate controllability of the system it is sufficient that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}+\epsilon \cdot \gamma_{T}+\beta \cdot \beta_{T 0} \leq \varepsilon . \tag{2.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $\alpha, \beta, \epsilon$, and $\varepsilon$ are given constants, while $\alpha_{T 0}, \gamma_{T}$, and $\beta_{T 0}$ depend on the system characteristics (these may be, for instance, material parameters, system geometry, boundedness, etc.). It follows from (2.23) that as long as

$$
\varepsilon-\alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}-\beta \cdot \beta_{T 0} \geq 0,
$$

any admissible boundary control

$$
u_{b} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{u \in \mathcal{U},|u| \leq \tilde{\epsilon}_{T}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}=\frac{\varepsilon-\alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}-\beta \cdot \beta_{T 0}}{\gamma_{T}}
$$

ensures the approximate controllability of the system at $T$.
Further, under the assumptions made above, consider the case of distributed control. Let the aim continue to be providing null-controllability

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

of the system. Assume that the right-hand side $f$ is linear in $u$ and (2.21) holds with

$$
\left|f_{0}\right| \leq \beta_{1}, \quad\left|f_{1}\right| \leq \beta_{2} \quad \text { in } \quad[a, b] \times \mathbb{R}^{+} .
$$

Then, by virtue of the Minkowski inequality, the following estimate holds on $\mathcal{U}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R}_{T 2}(u) & =\| \int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} G(x, \xi, T, \tau)\left(f_{0}(\xi, \tau) u(\tau)+\right. \\
& \left.+f_{1}(\xi, \tau)\right) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau \|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}} \leq \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b}\|G(x, \xi, T, \tau)\|_{\overline{\mathbf{w}}}\left|f_{0}(\xi, \tau) u(\tau)+f_{1}(\xi, \tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau \leq \\
& \leq\left(\beta_{1} \cdot \epsilon+\beta_{2}\right) \int_{0}^{T} \int_{a}^{b} g(\xi, T, \tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau= \\
& =\left(\beta_{1} \cdot \epsilon+\beta_{2}\right) \beta_{T 0} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For simplicity assume that

$$
u_{b} \equiv 0 \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+},
$$

providing

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(u_{b}\right)=0 .
$$

Therefore, for approximate controllability of the system it is sufficient that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}+\left(\beta_{1} \cdot \epsilon+\beta_{2}\right) \beta_{T 0} \leq \varepsilon . \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here the fixed constants are $\alpha, \epsilon, \beta_{1}$, and $\beta_{2}$. Then, the inequality (2.24)
provides a restriction on system parameters included in the quantities $\alpha_{T 0}$ and $\beta_{T 0}$, for which the system is approximately controllable. On the other hand, from (2.24) it follows that any admissible control

$$
u \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{u \in \mathcal{U}, \quad|u| \leq \tilde{\epsilon}_{T}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}=\frac{\varepsilon-\alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}-\beta_{2} \cdot \beta_{T 0}}{\beta_{1} \cdot \beta_{T 0}},
$$

ensures approximate controllability of the system at $T$ as long as

$$
\varepsilon-\alpha \cdot \alpha_{T 0}-\beta_{2} \cdot \beta_{T 0} \geq 0
$$

### 2.3 Particular Solutions of the Resolving System

Resolving systems define the set of resolving controls implicitly. The evaluation of those systems on the whole $\mathcal{U}$ can still require high computational cost. The determination of the general solution of resolving systems will significantly reduce that cost. Nevertheless, the explicit determination of resolving controls can be quite complicated. On the other hand, as it is shown below, it is possible to derive various hierarchies of admissible controls that satisfy the resolving system.

### 2.3.1 Exact Controllability

Generally, the exact controllability of a particular system in one space dimension ${ }^{6}$ is equivalent to the equality type constraint of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(u, x, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=f_{T}(x) \text { a.e. in }[a, b], \tag{2.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $K_{T}$ and $f_{T}$ are given functions.
Remark 2.2. In practice, the explicit determination of resolving controls from (2.25) can be quite complicated. Particularly, both sides of the resolving equation depend on $x$, while the control, be it distributed or boundary, should merely depend on $t$. Therefore, (2.25) cannot be viewed, e.g., as a Fredholm integral equation of the first kind. Nevertheless, in cases when

$$
K_{T}(u, x, \tau)=f_{T}(x) g_{T}(u, \tau) \quad \text { in } \quad[a, b],
$$

[^17]the equation (2.25) becomes a Fredholm integral equation of the first kind
$$
\int_{0}^{T} g_{T}(u, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=1
$$
which can be solved efficiently for generic kernels $g$ (refer to [189] for details). For particular solutions see also Subsection 2.3.2 below.

An efficient way of solving (2.25) can be developed based on the expansion of $K_{T}$ and $f_{T}$ into a series of orthogonal functions. Let $\left\{\varphi_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ be a family of orthogonal over the interval $[a, b]$ functions ${ }^{7}$, i.e.,

$$
\int_{a}^{b} \varphi_{m}(x) \varphi_{n}(x) \mathrm{d} x=\delta_{m}^{n}
$$

where $\delta_{m}^{n}$ is the Kronecker delta. Denote by $f_{T n}$ and $K_{T n}$ the expansion coefficients of the functions $f_{T}$ and $K_{T}$, respectively, so that

$$
f_{T}(x)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} f_{T n} \varphi_{n}(x)
$$

with

$$
f_{T n}=\int_{a}^{b} f_{T}(x) \varphi_{n}(x) \mathrm{d} x,
$$

and

$$
K_{T}(u, x, \tau)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} K_{T n}(u, \tau) \varphi_{n}(x)
$$

with

$$
K_{T n}(u, \tau)=\int_{a}^{b} K_{T}(u, x, \tau) \varphi_{n}(x) \mathrm{d} x .
$$

Then, since $\left\{\varphi_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ are orthogonal, the equation (2.25) is equivalent

[^18]
## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

to the infinite system

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} K_{T n}(u, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=f_{T n}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N} . \tag{2.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

In specific problems, depending on the required accuracy of computations, the decay rate of $K_{T n}$, and $f_{T n}$, the infinite system (2.26) is truncated and studied for some finite $N$.

Remark 2.3. Note that (2.26) or its truncated version can be treated in different ways. On one hand it is an infinite system of Fredholm integral equations of the first kind, which can be efficiently solved numerically [189-191]. On the other hand, it can be treated as an infinitedimensional problem of moments. The treating of (2.26) as a problem of moments has several advantages, among which are availability of explicit $L^{p}$-optimal solutions ${ }^{8}$ for $1 \leq p \leq \infty$, necessary and sufficient conditions for solution existence, etc. (see [192] for the nonlinear case and [67] for the linear case). Other treatments are also possible.

Another way to resolve (2.26) is the heuristic determination of controls. Namely, based on some considerations, say, the physical treatment of the problem, controller capabilities, etc., the control function is chosen to have a specific form containing a set of free parameters. This function is then substituted into the system (2.26) or its truncated version. Then, a discrete system of, in general, nonlinear algebraic equations is derived with respect to the set of free parameters. Eventually, different order numerical methods can be involved to approximate the solution of the derived system. See, for instance, $[193,194]$ for details.

[^19]Consider some particular cases. Let the infinite system (2.26) be truncated for some finite $N \in \mathbb{N}$. Then, the control function can be sought, for instance, in the form of the trigonometric sum

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \sin \left(\omega_{m} t+\gamma_{m}\right) \tag{2.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $M \in \mathbb{N}$ and $u_{m}, \omega_{m}$, and $\gamma_{m}$ are free parameters chosen to satisfy (2.26) exactly. Substituting (2.27) into the truncated part of the system (2.26), the system of nonlinear equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{K}_{T}\left(u_{m}, \omega_{m}, \gamma_{m}\right)=\boldsymbol{f}_{T} \tag{2.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

is obtained. Here, ${ }^{9}$

$$
\begin{gathered}
\boldsymbol{K}_{T}=\left(\tilde{K}_{T 1} \ldots \tilde{K}_{T N}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}, \quad \boldsymbol{f}_{T}=\left(f_{T 1} \ldots f_{T N}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} \\
\tilde{K}_{T n}\left(u_{m}, \omega_{m}, \gamma_{m}\right)=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T n}\left(\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \sin \left(\omega_{m} \tau+\gamma_{m}\right), \tau\right) \mathrm{d} \tau
\end{gathered}
$$

Consider also the piecewise-constant regime

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \theta\left(t-t_{m}\right), \tag{2.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

corresponding to a jump from the constant regime $u\left(t_{m}\right)$ to $u\left(t_{m+1}\right)$ when $t$ switches from $t_{m}$ to $t_{m+1}$. Here $u_{m}$ and $t_{m}$ are free parameters chosen to satisfy (2.26) exactly. At this, the instants $t_{m}$ satisfy the

[^20]
## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

inequality constraints

$$
0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2}<\cdots<t_{M} \leq T,
$$

foreclosing the overlap of different regimes.
In this case, (2.26) is reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{K}_{T}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\boldsymbol{f}_{T}, \tag{2.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{K}_{T n}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T n}\left(\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \theta\left(\tau-t_{m}\right), \tau\right) \mathrm{d} \tau .
$$

Furthermore, consider the impulsive regime

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \delta\left(t-t_{m}\right), \quad 0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2}<\cdots<t_{M} \leq T \tag{2.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

formally describing instantaneous impacts of magnitude $u_{m}$ at the instants $t=t_{m}$.

In this case also the free parameters are $u_{m}$ and $t_{m}$. Substituting (2.31) into (2.26), the following nonlinear system is derived:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{K}_{T}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\boldsymbol{f}_{T}, \tag{2.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{K}_{T n}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T n}\left(\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \delta\left(\tau-t_{m}\right), \tau\right) \mathrm{d} \tau .
$$

In many applications the piecewise-continuous control

$$
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m}(t) \chi_{\left[t_{m}, t_{m+1}\right]}(t), \quad 0 \leq t_{1}<\cdots<t_{M}<t_{M+1}=T
$$

is considered, corresponding to switches between the time-dependent regimes $u_{m}$. At this, any of the regimes (2.27), (2.29), and (2.31) can be used as $u_{m}$. In this case the resolving equation is reduced to

$$
\boldsymbol{K}_{T}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\boldsymbol{f}_{T},
$$

with

$$
\tilde{K}_{T n}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T n}\left(\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m}(\tau) \chi_{\left[t_{m}, t_{m+1}\right]}(\tau), \tau\right) \mathrm{d} \tau .
$$

In the case of boundary control, $K_{T}$ is linear in $u$, that is

$$
K_{T}(u, x, \tau)=K_{0 T}(x, \tau) u(\tau)+K_{1 T}(x, \tau)
$$

for given functions $K_{0 T}$ and $K_{1 T}$.
In addition, $u$ satisfies the boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(0)=u_{0}, \quad u(T)=u_{T} . \tag{2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, (2.28), (2.30), and (2.32) are reduced to linear systems for $u_{m}$. Indeed, in the case of, e.g., (2.31), the resulting system for the free parameters will be

$$
\boldsymbol{K}_{0 T}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=\boldsymbol{f}_{T}+\boldsymbol{K}_{1 T},
$$

where

$$
\boldsymbol{K}_{0 T}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
\tilde{K}_{0 T 1} & \ldots & \tilde{K}_{0 T N}
\end{array}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}, \quad \boldsymbol{K}_{1 T}=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
\tilde{K}_{1 T 1} & \ldots & \tilde{K}_{1 T N}
\end{array}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{T}\left[K_{0 T n}(\tau) \sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \delta\left(\tau-t_{m}\right)+K_{1 T n}(\tau)\right] \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \int_{0}^{T} K_{0 T n}(\tau) \delta\left(\tau-t_{m}\right) \mathrm{d} \tau+\int_{0}^{T} K_{1 T n}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} K_{0 T n}\left(t_{m}\right)+\int_{0}^{T} K_{1 T n}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau:= \\
& :=\tilde{K}_{0 T n}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)+\tilde{K}_{1 T n}
\end{aligned}
$$

Here $K_{0 T n}$ and $K_{1 T n}$ are the expansion coefficients of $K_{0 T}$ and $K_{1 T}$ into a series of $\left\{\varphi_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$, respectively. At this, (2.33) implies additional restrictions on $u_{m}$ : when $t_{1}=0$ and $t_{M}=T$,

$$
u_{1}=u_{0} \quad \text { and } \quad u_{M}=u_{T}
$$

Otherwise, (2.31) can be applied in the case when $u_{0}=u_{T}=0$.
Remark 2.4. In general, the $N$-dimensional system (2.28) contains $3 M$ unknowns, therefore it might be irresolvable. Nevertheless, if some of the free parameters, say $\omega_{m}$ and/or $\gamma_{m}, m=1, \ldots, M$, are prescribed, then (2.28) can become solvable. Moreover, in the case of boundary control, (2.28) is reduced to a linear system for $u_{m}$. Therefore, if $\omega_{m}$ and $\gamma_{m}$ are prescribed and $M=N, u_{m}$ are found straightforwardly. Otherwise, i.e., when $M \neq N$, for finding specific solutions, the techniques of nonlinear programming [195] must be utilized.

The same reasoning applies also to the systems (2.30) and (2.32) containing, in general, $2 M$ unknowns.

Remark 2.5. Any solution derived from the truncated version of the infinite-dimensional system (2.26) is approximate, which means that (2.25), in general, is satisfied approximately. In that case, the residue (2.10) is not exactly zero, i.e., (2.6) is not satisfied exactly. Thus, truncation of (2.26), which simplifies the explicit representation of resolving controls, eventually leads to the fulfilment of the approximate controllability condition (2.7).

### 2.3.2 Approximate Controllability

Assume that the system under study is linear in control. Then its approximate controllability is reduced to the evaluation of an integral equation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau)|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau=f_{T} \tag{2.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

for a positive constant $f_{T}$, a positive and bounded kernel $K_{T}$, and $u \in$ $\mathcal{U}$. In the case of boundary control, the control function is constrained by the discrete constraints

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(0)=u_{0}, \quad u(T)=u_{T} \tag{2.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is easy to see that one of the obvious solutions is the constant function

$$
\begin{equation*}
u=u^{o}=\text { const }, \tag{2.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

leading in (2.34) to

$$
\left|u^{o}\right|=\frac{f_{T}}{k_{T}} \text { with } k_{T}=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

When the control is carried out by the boundary data, this regime is applicable only in the case when $u_{0}=u_{T}=u^{o} \neq 0$.

In vibration control problems, time-harmonic controls of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=u^{o} \sin (\omega t+\gamma) \tag{2.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

are usually considered, reducing (2.34) to the nonlinear equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|u^{o}\right| \int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau)|\sin (\omega \tau+\gamma)| \mathrm{d} \tau=f_{T} \tag{2.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

with respect to the free parameters $u^{o}, \omega$, and $\gamma$. In the case of boundary control, (2.35) provides the additional constraint

$$
u_{0} \sin (\omega T+\gamma)=u_{T} \sin (\gamma)
$$

A particular solution of (2.34) can be constructed using the quasipolynomial control

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m} \sum_{n} u_{m n} t^{m}(T-t)^{n}, \tag{2.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $u_{m n}$ and $m, n \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$are free parameters satisfying the system (2.34). Assume, for simplicity, that $\operatorname{sign} u \geq 0$. Then, (2.34) provides

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{m} \sum_{n} u_{m n} P_{T}^{m, n}=f_{T}, \tag{2.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
P_{T}^{m, n}=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau) \tau^{m}(T-\tau)^{n} \mathrm{~d} \tau
$$

Evidently, when $m$ and $n$ are prescribed, (2.40) becomes a linear equation for $u_{m n}$.

In the case of boundary control, in order to satisfy (2.35) by the quasi-polynomial regime, the term

$$
u^{0}(t)=u_{0}+\left[u_{T}-u_{0}\right] \frac{t}{T}
$$

must be added to (2.39). Then, (2.40) is reduced to

$$
\sum_{m} \sum_{n} u_{m n} P_{T}^{m, n}=f_{T}-u_{0} P_{T}^{0,0}-\frac{u_{T}-u_{0}}{T} P_{T}^{1,0} .
$$

A fast verification of approximate controllability is provided by the trigonometric regime

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} \sum_{n} u_{m n}\left[1-\cos \left(\frac{2 \pi m t}{T}\right)\right]^{n} \tag{2.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $u_{m n}, m, M \in \mathbb{N}$, and $n \in \mathbb{R}^{+}$are the free parameters to satisfy (2.34). Assuming that $\operatorname{sign} u \geq 0$, for the free parameters the nonlinear equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{m=1}^{M} \sum_{n} u_{m n} C_{T}^{m, n}=f_{T} \tag{2.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

is derived, where

$$
C_{T}^{m, n}=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau)\left[1-\cos \left(\frac{2 \pi m \tau}{T}\right)\right]^{n} \mathrm{~d} \tau
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

In the case of boundary control, in order to satisfy (2.35), the term $u^{0}$ above should be added to the control. The resulting system reads as follows:

$$
\sum_{m=1}^{M} \sum_{n} u_{m n} C_{T}^{m, n}=f_{T}-u_{0} C_{T}^{0,0}-\frac{u_{T}-u_{0}}{T} C_{T}^{1,0}
$$

Other particular solutions appropriate for the physical treatment of the problem are also possible. In many applied problems it becomes necessary to involve sliding modes [43]. As an example consider the switching or piecewise constant control regime

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \theta\left(t-t_{m}\right) \tag{2.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

subject to the inequality type constraints $0 \leq t_{1}<\cdots<t_{M} \leq T$.
Here $u_{m}, t_{m}$, and $M$ are free parameters. Note that piecewise continuous regimes with $u_{m}=u_{m}(t)$ are also often considered. In such cases, any of the continuous regimes above can be considered as $u_{m}$.

Assuming that $\operatorname{sign} u \geq 0$, (2.34) can be reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{m=1}^{M} \Theta_{T}^{m}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right)=f_{T} \tag{2.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Theta_{T}^{m}\left(u_{m}, t_{m}\right) & =\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau) u_{m}(\tau) \theta\left(\tau-t_{m}\right) \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =\int_{t_{m}}^{T} K_{T}(\tau) u_{m}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that in the case of boundary control, the additional constraints

$$
u_{1}=u_{0}, \quad \sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m}(T)=u_{T}
$$

are derived when $t_{1}=0$. Otherwise, the term $u_{0} \theta(t-0)$ should be added to (2.43).

Another application of the sliding mode control is the so-called optimal stopping regime [196] usually given as

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=u^{o}(t) \theta\left(t^{o}-t\right) . \tag{2.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case, the equality (2.34) must be satisfied by an appropriate choice of $u^{o}$ and $t^{o}$. In addition, $t^{o}$ satisfies the inequality type constraint

$$
0<t^{o} \leq T
$$

Obviously, in this case,

$$
\operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq\left[0, t^{o}\right]
$$

Furthermore, (2.34) is reduced to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta_{T}\left(u^{o}, t^{o}\right)=f_{T}, \tag{2.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Theta_{T}\left(u^{o}, t^{o}\right) & =\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau)\left|u^{o}(\tau)\right| \theta\left(t^{o}-t\right) \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =\int_{0}^{t^{o}} K_{T}(\tau)\left|u^{o}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

Therefore, if $t^{o}$ is prescribed and $u^{o}=$ const, then

$$
\left|u^{o}\right|=\frac{f_{T}}{\Theta_{T}^{0}} \text { with } \Theta_{T}^{0}=\int_{0}^{t^{o}} K_{T}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text {. }
$$

In the case of boundary control, if $t^{o}<T$, only the first condition in (2.35) can be satisfied by $u^{o}$, and $u_{T}$ necessarily should be zero. Otherwise, if $t^{o}=T$, both conditions must be satisfied by $u^{o}$. When $u^{o}=$ const, the latter makes sense if and only if $u_{0}=u_{T}=u^{o}$.

The set of reachable terminal states can be significantly extended, by complementing $\mathcal{U}$ with impulsive actions of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} \delta\left(t-t_{m}\right), \tag{2.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

subject to the inequality type constraints

$$
0 \leq t_{1}<\cdots<t_{M} \leq T .
$$

The free parameters are $u_{m}, t_{m}$, and $M$. Additionally, if all $u_{m} \geq 0$, then (2.34) is reduced to the nonlinear constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{m=1}^{M} u_{m} D_{T}\left(t_{m}\right)=f_{T}, \tag{2.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
D_{T}\left(t_{m}\right)=\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau) \delta\left(\tau-t_{m}\right) \mathrm{d} \tau=K_{T}\left(t_{m}\right) .
$$

In the case of boundary control, if $t_{1}=0$ and $t_{M}=T$, (2.35) is satisfied only when

$$
u_{1}=u_{0}, \quad u_{N}=u_{T} .
$$

Otherwise, (2.47) is applicable if and only if

$$
u_{0}=0, \quad u_{N}=u_{T},
$$

or

$$
u_{1}=u_{0}, \quad u_{N}=0,
$$

or

$$
u_{0}=0, \quad u_{T}=0,
$$

respectively.

Remark 2.6. Concerning the determination of the free parameters from (2.38), (2.40), (2.42), (2.44), (2.46), and (2.48) recall Remark 2.4. Apparently, those control regimes can also be involved in the case when the system is nonlinear in control.

Remark 2.7. In all the cases above, together with the constraints derived above, the free parameters must also satisfy the inequality type constraint

$$
|u| \leq \epsilon \quad \text { in } \quad[0, T] .
$$

This means that the techniques of nonlinear programming likely must be applied.

Remark 2.8. In order to preserve the restriction $\operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq[0, T]$, the control regimes above must be multiplied by $\chi_{[0, T]}(t)$.

Remark 2.9. In practice, it might be the case that the substitution of any of the aforementioned particular solutions does not provide (2.34) exactly. Basically, for the approximate controllability it is sufficient

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

that the inequality

$$
\int_{0}^{T} K_{T}(\tau)|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau \leq f_{T}
$$

holds by a choice of the free parameters, which in some sense is an easier task. Particularly, for instance, in the case of (2.37), from (2.38) it follows that for the approximate controllability of the system it suffices to take

$$
\left|u^{o}\right| \leq \frac{f_{T}}{k_{T}}
$$

### 2.4 Examples

Some particular problems are considered in this section to test the approach described in Section 1.4 and reveal its advantages and drawbacks. Primary attention is paid to approximate controllability, even though the ways of analyzing exact controllability are discussed as well. The examples contain some specific issues that usually complicate the controllability analysis, such as variable system characteristics, an unbounded system domain, uncertainty in external parameters, point sources, etc.

### 2.4.1 Finite Thin Inhomogeneous Rod Heated from Both Ends

Let a sufficiently thin rod of length $l$ be heated from both ends $x=0$ and $x=l$. Assume that the rod is thermo-isolated from the external medium, which means that the heat transferring from the rod edges is exchanged strictly within the rod. Let the thermal conductivity and volumetric heat capacity of the rod, denoted here by $\kappa$ and $\nu$, respectively, be functions of the $x$-coordinate given by

$$
\kappa(x)=\kappa_{0} \chi(x), \quad \nu(x)=\frac{\nu_{0}}{\chi(x)} .
$$

Here $\kappa_{0}$ and $\nu_{0}$ are positive constants characterizing the thermal conductivity and volumetric heat capacity of a homogeneous material, and $\chi$ is a strictly positive and piecewise continuous in $[0, l]$ function describing the material distribution law within the rod. Evidently,

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

$\operatorname{supp}(\chi)=[0, l]$. The above assumption provides

$$
\kappa(x) \cdot \nu(x)=\kappa_{0} \nu_{0}=\text { const },
$$

which considerably simplifies the study.
The aim of the control is to choose boundary heating regimes, such that in a required time the temperature distribution within the rod becomes uniform and admits a given value.

The temperature distribution in the rod, denoted here by $\Theta$, obeys the one-dimensional heat equation with coordinate dependent coefficients

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nu(x) \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\left[\kappa(x) \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x}\right] \text { in }(0, l) \times \mathbb{R}^{+} . \tag{2.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

The boundary and initial conditions are as follows:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\Theta(0, t)=\Theta(l, t)=u_{b}(t) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+},  \tag{2.50}\\
\Theta(x, 0)=\Theta_{0}(x) \text { in }[0, l] . \tag{2.51}
\end{gather*}
$$

Mathematically, the problem is to find such an admissible control, $u_{b} \in$ $\mathcal{U}$, that in the required $T$ provides the terminal condition

$$
\Theta(x, T) \equiv \Theta_{T}=\text { const in }[0, l]
$$

exactly or approximately. In other words, it is required to find such a $u_{b} \in \mathcal{U}$ that the residue

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right)=\left\|\Theta(x, T)-\Theta_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}
$$

satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right)=0, \tag{2.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, if that does not hold,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right) \leq \varepsilon, \tag{2.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a required precision $\varepsilon>0$.
In the above definition of the residue, a weighted $L^{2}$ space is considered, where the weight is the coefficient $\nu$ of the heat equation ${ }^{10}$.

In addition, it is assumed that the boundary, initial, and terminal data are consistent, so that the boundary control satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{b}(0)=\Theta_{0}(0), u_{b}(T)=\Theta_{T} \tag{2.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

The set of admissible controls in this case is considered to be

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{u_{b} \in L^{2}[0, T], \quad \operatorname{supp}\left(u_{b}\right) \subseteq[0, T], \quad(2.54)\right\}
$$

According to the Green's representation formula, the general solution of (2.49)-(2.51), evaluated at the instant $t=T$ reads as

$$
\begin{align*}
\Theta(x, T) & =\int_{0}^{l} \Theta_{0}(\xi) G(x, \xi, T) \nu(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi+  \tag{2.55}\\
& +\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, T-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text { in }[0, l]
\end{align*}
$$

in which [77]

$$
G(x, \xi, t)=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}} \varphi_{n}(x) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \exp \left[-\lambda_{n}^{2} t\right]
$$

[^21]\[

$$
\begin{aligned}
G_{b}(x, t) & =-\int_{0}^{l} G(x, \xi, t)\left[\kappa(0) \delta^{\prime}(\xi)+\kappa(l) \delta^{\prime}(\xi-l)\right] \mathrm{d} \xi= \\
& =\left.\left[\kappa(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial \xi}\right]\right|_{\xi=0}+\left.\left[\kappa(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial \xi}\right]\right|_{\xi=l}= \\
& =\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\kappa(0) \varphi_{n}^{\prime}(0)+\kappa(l) \varphi_{n}^{\prime}(l)}{\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}} \varphi_{n}(x) \exp \left[-\lambda_{n}^{2} t\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$
\]

Above $\lambda_{n}^{2}$ and $\varphi_{n}$ are the eigenvalues and corresponding eigenfunctions of the following Sturm-Liouville problem:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d}{d x}\left[\kappa(x) \frac{d \varphi}{d x}\right]+\lambda^{2} \nu(x) \varphi=0 \text { in }(0, l),  \tag{2.56}\\
\varphi(0)=\varphi(l)=0 \tag{2.57}
\end{gather*}
$$

It is noteworthy that $(2.56),(2.57)$ admits an exact solution for a sufficiently large class of distribution functions $\chi$ [82].

Consider, in particular, the case of null-controllability, i.e., $\Theta_{T}=0$. Then, (2.52) is equivalent to

$$
\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, T-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+\int_{0}^{l} \Theta_{0}(\xi) G(x, \xi, T) \nu(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi=0
$$

or

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\exp \left[-\lambda_{n}^{2} T\right]}{\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}} \varphi_{n}(x) & {\left[\alpha_{n} \int_{0}^{T} \exp \left[\lambda_{n}^{2} \tau\right] u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+\right.} \\
& \left.+\int_{0}^{l} \Theta_{0}(\xi) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \nu(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi\right]=0
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\alpha_{n}=\kappa(0) \varphi_{n}^{\prime}(0)+\kappa(l) \varphi_{n}^{\prime}(l)$.
Further, since by the definition, $\left\{\varphi_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ are orthogonal over the
interval $[0, l]$ with the weight $\nu$, then the last equality is equivalent to the infinite-dimensional system

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{n} \int_{0}^{T} \exp \left[\lambda_{n}^{2} \tau\right] u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=-\psi_{n}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N} \tag{2.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\psi_{n}=\int_{0}^{l} \Theta_{0}(\xi) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \nu(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi
$$

Then, the set of resolving controls will be

$$
\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}=\{u \in \mathcal{U},(2.58)\}
$$

Depending on the asymptotic behavior of $\lambda_{n}$ and $\psi_{n}$ for large $n$, (2.58) can be truncated by some finite $N$ (refer to Section 2.3).

Consider the approximate null-controllability of the rod. Then, by virtue of the Minkowski and Cauchy-Schwartz inequalities, the residue can be estimated as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right) & \leq\left\|\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, T-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}+\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]} \leq \\
& \leq \int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau)\left|u_{b}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau+\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(t) & =\left\|G_{b}(x, t)\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}=\sqrt{\int_{0}^{l} G_{b}^{2}(x, t) \nu(x) \mathrm{d} x}= \\
& =\sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha_{n}^{2}}{\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}} \exp \left[-2 \lambda_{n}^{2} t\right]}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
M_{T}(x) & =\int_{0}^{l} \Theta_{0}(\xi) G(x, \xi, T) \nu(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi= \\
& =\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\exp \left[-\lambda_{n}^{2} T\right]}{\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}} \varphi_{n}(x) \psi_{n} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Here it is taken into account that

$$
\begin{gather*}
{\left[\sum_{n} a_{n}\right]^{2}=\sum_{n}\left[a_{n}^{2}+a_{n} \cdot \sum_{k \neq n} a_{k}\right],}  \tag{2.59}\\
\int_{0}^{l} \varphi_{n}^{2}(x) \nu(x) \mathrm{d} x=\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2},
\end{gather*}
$$

as well as the fact that the functions $\left\{\varphi_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ are orthogonal over the interval $[0, l]$ with the weight $\nu$. Furthermore, straightforward calculations lead to

$$
\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}=\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\exp \left[-2 \lambda_{n}^{2} T\right]}{\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}} \psi_{n}^{2} .
$$

Eventually, for the approximate null-controllability of the rod it is sufficient to find such a control $u_{b} \in \mathcal{U}$ that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau)\left|u_{b}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau \leq \varepsilon-\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]} \tag{2.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

as far as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}=\varepsilon-\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]} \geq 0 \tag{2.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

Apparently, since $M_{T}$ has an exponential decay in $T$, then there exists such a $T>0$ that (2.61) holds. On the other hand, as it was mentioned in Subsection 2.3.2, for fixed $T$, (2.61) can be provided by a particular choice of system characteristics. To make this obvious, consider particular inhomogeneities of the rod. More specifically, consider
the cases when

$$
\chi(x)=\exp (\alpha x), \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{R}
$$

and

$$
\chi(x)=\left(\frac{x}{l}+\beta\right)^{-\alpha}, \quad \beta>0, \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{R}
$$

Setting $\alpha=0$ at any step of the preceeding calculations, the case of a homogeneous rod will be obtained. It is obvious that the hardening or the softening of the rod material in both cases depend on the sign of $\alpha$.

In both cases, the general solution of (2.56) reads as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi(x)=c_{1} \sin \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}} \phi(x)\right]+c_{2} \cos \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}} \phi(x)\right] \text { in }[0, l] \tag{2.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

where in the first case

$$
\phi(x)=\frac{1}{\alpha} \exp (-\alpha x),
$$

while in the second case

$$
\phi(x)=\frac{l}{\alpha+1}\left(\frac{x}{l}+\beta\right)^{\alpha+1} .
$$

Here,

$$
d=\frac{\kappa_{0}}{\nu_{0}}
$$

is the constant thermal diffusivity of a material with the thermal conductivity $\kappa_{0}$ and the volumetric heat capacity $\nu_{0}$. It measures the rate of the heat transfer from areas with higher temperature to those with lower temperature. Therefore, the larger the $d$ is, the faster the heat transfers.

Involving the boundary conditions (2.57), in both cases of inhomo-

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

geneity it is derived that $c_{1}$ remains arbitrary, while

$$
c_{2}=-c_{1} \tan \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}} \phi(0)\right]
$$

and $\lambda_{n}$ are the roots of the equation

$$
\sin \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}} \phi(l)\right]-\cos \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}} \phi(l)\right] \tan \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}} \phi(0)\right]=0 .
$$

After simple transformations, this equation becomes

$$
\sin \left[\frac{\lambda}{\sqrt{d}}(\phi(l)-\phi(0))\right]=0
$$

admitting the solution

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{n}=\sqrt{d} \frac{\pi n}{\phi(l)-\phi(0)}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N} \tag{2.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

as long as $\phi(l)-\phi(0) \neq 0$. Note that this holds in both cases of inhomogeneity considered above.

Since $c_{1}$ is arbitrary, let $c_{1}=1$. Then, (2.62) is reduced to

$$
\varphi_{n}(x)=\sin \left[\frac{\phi(x)-\phi(0)}{\phi(l)-\phi(0)} \cdot \pi n\right]
$$

Moreover, if in particular $\Theta_{0}=\varphi_{N}$ for a fixed $N \in \mathbb{N}$, then using the orthogonality of the functions $\left\{\varphi_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{\infty}$ over the interval $[0, l]$ with the weight $\nu$ once again, by virtue of $(2.63),\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}$ is straightforwardly reduced to

$$
\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L_{\nu}^{2}[0, l]}^{2}=\exp \left[-2 \lambda_{N}^{2} T\right]=\exp \left[-\frac{2 \pi^{2} N^{2} d T}{(\phi(l)-\phi(0))^{2}}\right]
$$

Therefore, indeed, by a specific choice of material characteristics $d, \alpha$, and $\beta$, it is in principle possible to provide the inequality

$$
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T} \geq 0
$$

for a given $\varepsilon$.
Then, any admissible control

$$
u_{b} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{r e s}=\left\{u_{b} \in \mathcal{U}, \quad\left|u_{b}\right| \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}}{\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}=\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

provides approximate null-controllability of the rod at $T$.
For numerical analysis consider the case when

$$
\chi(x)=\exp (\alpha x) \quad \text { with } \alpha=\frac{1}{l} .
$$

Assume that the bulk material of the rod (i.e., the material with $\kappa_{0}$ and $\nu_{0}$ ) is made from copper ${ }^{11}$. Moreover, let

$$
l=0.1, \quad \Theta_{0}=\varphi_{3}, \quad \varepsilon=10^{-3} .
$$

Then,

$$
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T} \geq 0 \text { for } T \geq 42 .
$$

First consider the case of the constant control regime (2.36). Then, $u^{o}=10^{-4}$ ensures the approximate null-controllability of the rod for

[^22]$T \geq 90$ (see Fig. 2.3). Moreover, it turns out that regimes with $u^{o}<$ $10^{-4}$ may provide (2.60) for $42 \leq T<90$.

Now consider the quasi-polynomial control regime (2.39). Then, the approximate null-controllability of the rod is provided for $T=110$ when $u_{11}=5 \cdot 10^{-7}, m=n=1$ (see Fig. 2.4).

On the other hand, involving the trigonometric control regime (2.41), it is possible to reduce the control time to $T=70$ (see Fig. 2.5).

It turns out that regimes like switching control (2.43) or optimal stopping control (2.45) or their mixed variants can be quite efficient in the sense that the approximate null-controllability of the rod can be achieved with the same precision, but with less intensity of control and for smaller $T$. For example, in the case when

$$
\begin{aligned}
u_{b}(t) & =2 \cdot 10^{-5}[\theta(t-25)-\theta(t-30)+ \\
& +\theta(t-45)-\theta(t-50)+\theta(t-65)-\theta(t-70)],
\end{aligned}
$$

the rod is approximately null-controllable in $T=70$ (see Fig. 2.6).
The residue (2.53) is evaluated for the control regimes considered above (see Tab. 2.1). The smallest value of $\mathcal{R}_{T}=2.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ for the residue guarantees the quasi-polynomial control regime in $T=110$. On the other hand, the trigonometric and switching regimes may provide $\mathcal{R}_{T} \leq 5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ already for $T=70$.

| Control regime | Residue | Control time |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Constant | $3 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 90 |
| Quasi-polynomial | $2.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 110 |
| Trigonometric | $5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 70 |
| Switching | $5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 70 |

Table 2.1: Residue (2.53) for different control regimes: $\chi(x)=$ $\exp (\alpha x)$

### 2.4.2 Semi-Infinite Rod Heated by a Point Source

Let a sufficiently thin semi-infinite rod be thermo-isolated from the external medium. Since it is proved that the rod is not exactly nullcontrollable by means of $L^{2}$ boundary controls [33], let the rod be heated by a point source with a controllable intensity $u=u(t)$ placed at an inner point $x=x_{0}, 0<x_{0}<\infty$, of the rod. The aim of the control is to determine admissible intensities for the source, which heats the rod to a required temperature in a given finite time $T$.

The temperature distribution in the rod, denoted here by $\Theta$, obeys the one-dimensional heat equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t}=d \frac{\partial^{2} \Theta}{\partial x^{2}}+u(t) v(x) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}, \tag{2.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the conditions of thermo-isolation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta(0, t)=\lim _{x \rightarrow \infty} \Theta(x, t) \equiv 0 \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{2.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $d$ is the thermal diffusivity of the rod.
Remark 2.10. In this and related controllability problems, the function $v$ in the right-hand side of (2.64), describing the shape of the heaters, plays a very crucial role. It turns out that the set of the reachable terminal states strongly depends on $v$. Moreover, as it is shown below, the null-controllability of the rod can be achieved only for very specific forms of $v$.

Very often the case of heating with point sources is considered (see, e.g., [28, 165]). In such cases, $v$ is expressed in terms of the Dirac function and its derivatives, so that the right-hand side of (2.64) becomes a distribution. The practical implementation of point sources is
usually carried out by means of $L_{l o c}^{1}$ sequences converging in the sense of distributions to the Dirac function. Examples of such sequences include [64, 65]

$$
\delta_{\zeta}(x)=\frac{1}{\pi|\zeta|} \exp \left[-\left(\frac{x}{\zeta}\right)^{2}\right], \quad \delta_{\zeta}(x)=\frac{1}{\pi} \frac{\zeta}{\zeta^{2}+x^{2}} \text { as } \zeta \rightarrow 0 .
$$

For small $\zeta, v_{\zeta}=\delta_{\zeta}$ in some approximation describes a point heater (see Fig. 2.1).


Figure 2.1: $\delta_{\zeta}$ for decreasing values of $\zeta$

The temperature distribution at the initial instant $t=0$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta(x, 0)=\Theta_{0}(x) \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} . \tag{2.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

Mathematically, the problem is to choose such a distributed heating regime $u \in \mathcal{U}$, that in a given $T$ provides a desired terminal distribution

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

of the temperature in the rod given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta(x, T)=\Theta_{T}(x) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}, \tag{2.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

for a prescribed function $\Theta_{T} \in L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}\right)$.
The set of admissible controls is considered to be

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{u \in L^{\infty}[0, T],|u| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq[0, T]\right\}
$$

Since the rod is semi-infinite and the heat transfers with a finite speed, then, generally speaking, for exact satisfaction of the terminal condition (2.67) it is required to consider infinitely large $T$ (refer to the reasoning made in [46]). That is why in this case the consideration of the approximate controllability is more appropriate.

In other words, it is required to find a $u \in \mathcal{U}$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u)=\left\|\Theta(x, T)-\Theta_{T}(x)\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}\right)} \leq \varepsilon, \tag{2.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a given precision $\varepsilon>0$.
Assume that the boundary and initial data are consistent, so that

$$
\Theta_{0}(0)=\lim _{x \rightarrow \infty} \Theta_{0}(x)=0 .
$$

For the general solution of (2.64)-(2.66) evaluated at $t=T$, the Green's formula provides

$$
\begin{align*}
\Theta(x, T) & =\int_{0}^{\infty} G(x, \xi, T) \Theta_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{T} G_{v}(x, T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+}, \tag{2.69}
\end{align*}
$$

where [77]

$$
G(x, \xi, t)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d t}}\left[\exp \left[-\frac{(x-\xi)^{2}}{4 d t}\right]-\exp \left[-\frac{(x+\xi)^{2}}{4 d t}\right]\right]
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{v}(x, t)=\int_{0}^{\infty} G(x, \xi, t) v(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi \tag{2.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the initial temperature $\Theta_{0}$ and the heater shape $v$ must be chosen in such a way that the improper integrals in (2.69) and (2.70) are well defined.

Further, since the Minkowski inequality provides

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u) \leq \int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau)|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau+\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}\right)}
$$

where

$$
g(t)=\left\|G_{v}(x, t)\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}\right)},
$$

and

$$
M_{T}(x)=\int_{0}^{\infty} G(x, \xi, T) \Theta_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi-\Theta_{T}(x),
$$

then, for the fulfillment of (2.68), i.e., for the approximate controllability of the rod, it suffices that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau)|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau+\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}\right)} \leq \varepsilon \tag{2.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

Evidently, as far as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}=\varepsilon-\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}\left(\mathbb{R}^{+}\right)} \geq 0 \tag{2.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

holds, then any admissible control satisfying

$$
u \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{u \in \mathcal{U},|u| \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}}{\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}=\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

ensures the approximate controllability of the rod at $T$. The particular solutions from Section 2.3 can be involved to satisfy (2.71).

Let in particular

$$
\begin{gathered}
v(x)=\delta(x-0.5), \quad \Theta_{0}(x)=\theta(x)-\theta(x-1), \\
\Theta_{T} \equiv 0, \quad \varepsilon=10^{-3} .
\end{gathered}
$$

In that case,

$$
M_{T}(x)=\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{2}\left[2 \operatorname{erf}\left[\frac{x}{\sqrt{4 \pi d T}}\right]-\operatorname{erf}\left[\frac{x-1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d T}}\right]-\operatorname{erf}\left[\frac{x+1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d T}}\right]\right]
$$

which (for fixed $x$ ) decreases as $T$ increases. Then, the inequality (2.72) holds for very large values of $T$, specifically, for $T \geq 5.16 \cdot 10^{5}$. The same behaviour is observed for a number of other initial conditions. Therefore, in such cases (2.68) must be verified directly.

On the other hand, for the initial temperature of the form

$$
\Theta_{0}(x)=\exp \left[-\frac{(x-0.1)^{2}}{\zeta^{2}}\right] \text { with } \zeta=10^{-3},
$$

the inequality (2.72) is satisfied already for $T \geq 213.18$. Let $T=240$.

Then, the control

$$
\begin{align*}
u(t) & =u^{o}\left(1-\cos \left[\frac{2 \pi m}{T} t\right]\right)^{n}[-[\theta(t)-\theta(t-60)]+ \\
& +[\theta(t-90)-\theta(t-120)+\theta(t-150)-\theta(t-180)]+  \tag{2.73}\\
& +[\theta(t-200)-\theta(t-240)]],
\end{align*}
$$

with $m=5, n=0.3$ and $u^{o}=10^{-4}$ ensures the approximate nullcontrollability of the rod with $\mathcal{R}_{T} \leq 8 \cdot 10^{-4}$ (see Fig. 2.7).

Implementing (2.68) directly, it is possible to achieve the approximate null-controllability of the rod for smaller values of $T$. Indeed, let $T=150$. Then, the switching control

$$
\begin{align*}
u(t) & =u^{o}[\theta(15-t)-\theta(t-30)+\theta(t-45)]-  \tag{2.74}\\
& -u^{o}[\theta(t-60)-\theta(t-90)-\theta(t-100)+\theta(t-120)],
\end{align*}
$$

with $u^{o}=10^{-4}$ ensures the approximate null-controllability of the rod with $\mathcal{R}_{T} \leq 8 \cdot 10^{-4}$ (see Fig. 2.8).

### 2.4.3 Elastic Beam Subjected to a Dynamic Load with Uncertainty

Consider an elastic finite beam of length $l$ subjected to a concentrated dynamical load of intensity $P$. The exact location of the load application, denoted by $x_{0}$, is not known, however it is given that $x_{0} \in\left(l_{0}, l_{1}\right) \subset(0, l)$ for prescribed $l_{0}$ and $l_{1}$. Assume that $x=l$ end of the beam is simply supported, while at $x=0$ only the bending moment is fixed, and the transverse deflection is controlled. The aim is to find boundary controls providing controllability of the beam in a given time $T$. It is supposed that the load vanishes at some $0<T_{0}<T$.

Since there exists an uncertainty in the system, it is hardly possible to provide exact controllability in a finite time [35, 197]. That is why the approximate controllability of the beam is studied.

Assume also that the beam is sufficiently thin and the load intensity varies in such a range that the beam undergoes merely infinitesimal strains. In that case, the Euler-Bernoulli assumptions can be involved (see [198] for details). Then, limiting the consideration by the linear elasticity, the transverse deflection of the beam, denoted here by $w$, satisfies the fourth order differential equation ${ }^{12}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
E J \frac{\partial^{4} w}{\partial x^{4}}+\rho S \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial t^{2}}=P(t) \chi_{\left[0, T_{0}\right]}(t) \delta\left(x-x_{0}\right) \quad \text { in } \quad(0, l) \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{2.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

subject to the boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(0, t)=u_{b}(t), \quad w(l, t)=\left.\frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}}\right|_{x=0, l}=0 \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} . \tag{2.76}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here $E$ is the Young's modulus, $\rho$ is the density, $J$ is the cross-sectional

[^23]moment of inertia, and $S$ is the cross-sectional area of the beam. The quantity $E J$ measures the resistance of the beam against a bending load and is called bending stiffness.

At the initial time instant $t=0$ the state of the beam is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(x, 0)=w_{0}(x),\left.\quad \frac{\partial w}{\partial t}\right|_{t=0}=w_{01}(x) \text { in }[0, l] . \tag{2.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

Mathematically, the problem is to find such a boundary control function $u_{b}$, that provides the inequalities

$$
\begin{gather*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right)=\left\|w(x, T)-w_{T}(x)\right\|_{L^{2}[0, l]} \leq \varepsilon  \tag{2.78}\\
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(u_{b}\right)=\left\|\left.\frac{\partial w}{\partial t}\right|_{t=T}-w_{T 1}(x)\right\|_{L^{2}[0, l]} \leq \varepsilon_{1} \tag{2.79}
\end{gather*}
$$

simultaneously in a given finite $T$ with required precisions $\varepsilon, \varepsilon_{1}>0$ and given functions $w_{T}, w_{T 1} \in L^{2}[0, l]$. As in many applications, here it is assumed that $w_{T}=w_{T 1} \equiv 0$, i.e., it is required to suspend the vibrations of the beam.

The initial and boundary data are supposed to be consistent:

$$
\begin{align*}
& u_{b}(0)=w_{0}(0), \\
& u_{b}(T)=w_{T}(0)=w_{01}(0),  \tag{2.80}\\
& u_{b}(T)=w_{T 1}(0) .
\end{align*}
$$

Then, the set of admissible controls is considered to be

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{u \in L^{2}[0, T],|u| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq[0, T],(2.80)\right\}
$$

Unlike the previous two cases, where only one inequality (c.f., for example, (2.53) or (2.68)) must have been provided, in this case the

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

two inequalities (2.78) and (2.79) must be provided simultaneously.
For the further analysis it is convenient to use the dimensionless quantities

$$
\frac{x}{l}, \frac{c t}{l}, \frac{w}{l}, \frac{P l^{2}}{E J},
$$

for the coordinate, time, deflection, and load intensity, respectively. Here $c$ is the speed of the elastic wave propagation in the beam:

$$
c=\sqrt{\frac{E}{\rho}} .
$$

New symbols for those quantities are not introduced, in order to make the reading convenient.

Then, the general solution of (2.75)-(2.77) according to the Green's representation formula is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
w(x, t) & =\int_{0}^{1}\left[w_{0}(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}+w_{01}(\xi) G(x, \xi, t)\right] \mathrm{d} \xi+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{0}^{1} P(\tau) \chi_{\left[0, T_{0}\right]}(\tau) \delta\left(\xi-x_{0}\right) G(x, \xi, t-\tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} u_{b}(\tau) G_{b}(x, t-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text { in }[0,1] \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{2.81}
\end{align*}
$$

Here [77]

$$
\begin{gathered}
G(x, \xi, t)=\frac{2 \alpha}{\pi^{2}} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{2}} \varphi_{n}(x) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \psi_{n}(t), \\
\varphi_{n}(x)=\sin (\pi n x), \quad \psi_{n}(t)=\sin \left(\frac{\pi^{2} n^{2}}{\alpha} t\right), \quad \alpha^{2}=\frac{S l^{2}}{J},
\end{gathered}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
G_{b}(x, t) & =\int_{0}^{1} \delta^{\prime \prime \prime}(\xi) G(x, \xi, t) \mathrm{d} \xi=-\left.\frac{\partial^{3} G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial \xi^{3}}\right|_{\xi=0}= \\
& =2 \pi \alpha \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n \varphi_{n}(x) \psi_{n}(t)
\end{aligned}
$$

Differentiation of (2.81) with respect to $t$ once provides a similar representation formula for the beam particle velocity:

$$
\begin{align*}
\frac{\partial w(x, t)}{\partial t} & =\int_{0}^{1}\left[w_{0}(\xi) \frac{\partial^{2} G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t^{2}}+w_{01}(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}\right] \mathrm{d} \xi+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{0}^{1} P(\tau) \chi_{\left[0, T_{0}\right]}(\tau) \delta\left(\xi-x_{0}\right) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t-\tau)}{\partial t} \mathrm{~d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} u_{b}(\tau) \frac{\partial G_{b}(x, t-\tau)}{\partial t} \mathrm{~d} \tau \text { in }[0,1] \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{2.82}
\end{align*}
$$

For the derivation of (2.82) the Leibniz rule

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \int_{0}^{t} f(t, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=f(t, t)+\int_{0}^{t} \frac{\partial f(t, \tau)}{\partial t} \mathrm{~d} \tau
$$

is taken into account together with the obvious relation

$$
G(\cdot, \cdot, 0) \equiv 0
$$

Evaluating the expressions (2.81) and (2.82) at $t=T$ and substituting into the inequalities (2.78) and (2.79), respectively, by virtue of the Minkowski and Cauchy-Schwartz inequalities, the following estimates are derived

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right) \leq \int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau)\left|u_{b}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau+\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]} \tag{2.83}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}\left(u_{b}\right) \leq \int_{0}^{T} g_{1}(T-\tau)\left|u_{b}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau+\left\|M_{1 T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}, \tag{2.84}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
g(t) & =\left\|G_{b}(x, t)\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}, \quad g_{1}(t)=\left\|\frac{\partial G_{b}(x, t)}{\partial t}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}, \\
M_{T}\left(x, x_{0}\right) & =\left.\int_{0}^{1}\left[w_{0}(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}+w_{01}(\xi) G(x, \xi, t)\right]\right|_{t=T} \mathrm{~d} \xi+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{T_{0}} \int_{0}^{1} P(\tau) \delta\left(\xi-x_{0}\right) G(x, \xi, T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau= \\
& =\left.\int_{0}^{1}\left[w_{0}(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}+w_{01}(\xi) G(x, \xi, t)\right]\right|_{t=T} \mathrm{~d} \xi+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{T_{0}} P(\tau) G\left(x, x_{0}, T-\tau\right) \mathrm{d} \tau, \\
M_{1 T}\left(x, x_{0}\right) & =\left.\int_{0}^{1}\left[w_{0}(\xi) \frac{\partial^{2} G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t^{2}}+w_{01}(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}\right]\right|_{t=T} \mathrm{~d} \xi+ \\
& +\left.\int_{0}^{T_{0}} \int_{0}^{1} P(\tau) \delta\left(\xi-x_{0}\right) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, T-\tau)}{\partial t}\right|_{t=T} \mathrm{~d} \tau= \\
& =\left.\int_{0}^{1}\left[w_{0}(\xi) \frac{\partial^{2} G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t^{2}}+w_{01}(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}\right]\right|_{t=T} \mathrm{~d} \xi+ \\
& +\left.\int_{0}^{T_{0}} P(\tau) \frac{\partial G\left(x, x_{0}, T-\tau\right)}{\partial t}\right|_{t=T} \mathrm{~d} \tau .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, the right-hand sides of the inequalities (2.83) and (2.84) depend on the uncertain value of $x_{0} \in\left(l_{0}, l_{1}\right)$ through the norms of the functions $M_{T}$ and $M_{1 T}$. Therefore, the boundary control needs to be determined to compensate for the "worst" influence of $x_{0}$ on $\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}$ and $\left|\mid M_{1 T} \|_{L^{2}[0,1]}\right.$.

Computing the corresponding time derivatives of the Green's func-
tion above,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{\partial G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t}=2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \varphi_{n}(x) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \psi_{1 n}(t), \\
& \frac{\partial^{2} G(x, \xi, t)}{\partial t^{2}}=-\frac{2 \pi^{2}}{\alpha} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{2} \varphi_{n}(x) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \psi_{n}(t), \\
& \frac{\partial G_{b}(x, t)}{\partial t}=2 \pi^{3} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{3} \varphi_{n}(x) \psi_{1 n}(t),
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\psi_{1 n}(t)=\cos \left(\frac{\pi^{2} n^{2}}{\alpha} t\right)
$$

the functions $g, g_{1}$ and $M_{T}, M_{1 T}$ can be evaluated as follows:

$$
\begin{gathered}
g(t)=\sqrt{\int_{0}^{1} G_{b}^{2}(x, t) \mathrm{d} x}=\sqrt{2} \pi \alpha \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{2} \psi_{n}^{2}(t)}, \\
g_{1}(t)=\sqrt{\int_{0}^{1}\left(\frac{\partial G_{b}(x, t)}{\partial t}\right)^{2} \mathrm{~d} x}=\sqrt{2} \pi^{3} \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} n^{6} \psi_{1 n}^{2}(t)},
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
M_{T}\left(x, x_{0}\right) & =\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{n}\left(x_{0}, T\right) \varphi_{n}(x), \\
M_{1 T}\left(x, x_{0}\right) & =\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{1 n}\left(x_{0}, T\right) \varphi_{n}(x),
\end{aligned}
$$

Here

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{n}\left(x_{0}, T\right) & =2 w_{0 n} \psi_{1 n}(T)+\frac{2 \alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}} w_{01 n} \psi_{n}(T)+ \\
& +\frac{2 \alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}} P_{n}(T) \varphi_{n}\left(x_{0}\right), \\
A_{1 n}\left(x_{0}, T\right) & =-\frac{2 \pi^{2} n^{2}}{\alpha} w_{0 n} \psi_{n}(T)+2 w_{01 n} \psi_{1 n}(T)+ \\
& +2 P_{1 n}(T) \varphi_{n}\left(x_{0}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
w_{0 n} & =\int_{0}^{1} w_{0}(\xi) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi, \\
w_{01 n} & =\int_{0}^{1} w_{01}(\xi) \varphi_{n}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi, \\
P_{n}\left(T_{0}, T\right) & =\int_{0}^{T_{0}} P(\tau) \psi_{n}(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \\
P_{1 n}\left(T_{0}, T\right) & =\int_{0}^{T_{0}} P(\tau) \psi_{1 n}(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau .
\end{aligned}
$$

Moreover, taking into account the summation formula (2.59) and that in this case

$$
\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}^{2}=\frac{1}{2}
$$

the direct integration leads to

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}^{2} & =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{n}^{2}\left(x_{0}, T\right) \\
\left\|M_{1 T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}^{2} & =\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{1 n}^{2}\left(x_{0}, T\right) \tag{2.85}
\end{align*}
$$

Remark 2.11. It is evident from the expressions for $A_{n}$ and $A_{1 n}$ that when $x_{0} \searrow 0$ or $x_{0} \nearrow 1$, then $M_{T}$ and $M_{1 T}$ become independent on $x_{0}$. It is also obvious that the "worst" influence $x_{0}$ has on $\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}$ and $\left\|M_{1 T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}$ when $x_{0} \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}$, i.e., when the load is acting at the mid-point of the beam. This is a consequence which should be expected.

On the other hand, assuming that for a given constant $P_{0}$

$$
|P(t)| \leq P_{0} \quad \text { in } \quad\left[0, T_{0}\right]
$$

the lower and upper bounds of the integrals in $P_{n}$ and $P_{1 n}$ are estimated as follows:

$$
\left|P_{n}\left(T_{0}, T\right)\right| \leq \frac{2 P_{0} \alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}}, \quad\left|P_{1 n}\left(T_{0}, T\right)\right| \leq \frac{4 P_{0} \alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}} .
$$

It is taken into account that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \int_{0}^{T_{0}}\left|\psi_{n}(T-\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau=\frac{\alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}}\left[\psi_{1 n}\left(T-T_{0}\right) \operatorname{sign}\left[\psi_{n}\left(T-T_{0}\right)\right]-\right. \\
&\left.-\psi_{1 n}(T) \operatorname{sign}\left[\psi_{n}(T)\right]\right] \\
& \begin{aligned}
\int_{0}^{T}\left|\psi_{1 n}(T-\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau & =\frac{\alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}}\left[2-\psi_{n}\left(T-T_{0}\right) \operatorname{sign}\left[\psi_{1 n}\left(T-T_{0}\right)\right]+\right. \\
& \left.+\psi_{n}(T) \operatorname{sign}\left[\psi_{1 n}(T)\right]\right] .
\end{aligned}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore the Minkowski inequality provides

$$
\begin{aligned}
& A_{n}^{2}\left(x_{0}, T\right) \leq A_{0 n}^{2}(T)+\left(\frac{4 P_{0} \alpha^{2}}{\pi^{4} n^{4}}\right)^{2}, \\
& A_{1 n}^{2}\left(x_{0}, T\right) \leq A_{01 n}^{2}(T)+\left(\frac{4 P_{0} \alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}}\right)^{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

where

$$
\begin{aligned}
A_{0 n}(T) & =2 w_{0 n} \psi_{1 n}(T)+\frac{2 \alpha}{\pi^{2} n^{2}} w_{01 n} \psi_{n}(T) \\
A_{01 n}(T) & =-\frac{2 \pi^{2} n^{2}}{\alpha} w_{0 n} \psi_{n}(T)+2 w_{01 n} \psi_{1 n}(T)
\end{aligned}
$$

Substituting those estimates into (2.85) and taking into account the values of the series

$$
\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{4}}=\frac{\pi^{4}}{90}, \quad \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n^{8}}=\frac{\pi^{8}}{9450},
$$

the norms in (2.85) are estimated as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}^{2} \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{0 n}^{2}(T)+\frac{8}{4725} P_{0}^{2} \alpha^{4}, \\
& \left\|M_{1 T}\right\|_{L^{2}[0,1]}^{2} \leq \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{01 n}^{2}(T)+\frac{16}{90} P_{0}^{2} \alpha^{2} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus, as far as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}=\varepsilon-\sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{0 n}^{2}(T)+\frac{8}{4725} P_{0}^{2} \alpha^{4}} \geq 0,  \tag{2.86}\\
& \tilde{\varepsilon}_{1 T}=\varepsilon_{1}-\sqrt{\frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_{01 n}^{2}(T)+\frac{16}{90} P_{0}^{2} \alpha^{2}} \geq 0, \tag{2.87}
\end{align*}
$$

any admissible control

$$
u_{b} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{u \in \mathcal{U}, \quad|u| \leq \min \left\{\frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}}{\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}}, \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{1 T}}{\tilde{\epsilon}_{1 T}}\right\}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}=\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau, \quad \tilde{\epsilon}_{1 T}=\int_{0}^{T} g_{1}(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

provides the approximate null-controllability of the beam at the required $T$ for any $x_{0} \in\left(l_{0}, l_{1}\right)$.

For numerical analysis let the cross section of the beam be rectangular, providing

$$
S=b h, \quad J=\frac{b h^{3}}{12}, \quad \alpha^{2}=12 \frac{l^{2}}{h^{2}}, \quad \frac{P l^{2}}{E J}=\frac{P}{E h^{2}} \alpha^{2}
$$

where $b$ is the width and $h$ is the thickness of the beam. Moreover, let

$$
\begin{gathered}
w_{0}(x)=w_{01}(x)=\varphi_{1}(x), \quad P=P_{0}=\text { const }, \quad T_{0}=1 \\
\frac{l}{h}=10, \quad \frac{P_{0}}{E h^{2}} \alpha^{2}=1.26 \cdot 10^{-4}, \quad \varepsilon=10^{-2}
\end{gathered}
$$

Then, the inequalities (2.86) and (2.87) are simultaneously satisfied for $6.41 \leq T \leq 6.54$ (see Fig. 2.2). Fix $T=6.5$. Then,

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T} \approx 720, \quad \tilde{\epsilon}_{1 T} \approx 165.14
$$

so that admissible controls with

$$
\left|u_{b}\right| \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{1 T}}{\tilde{\epsilon}_{1 T}} \approx 5.4 \cdot 10^{-5}
$$

ensure approximate null-controllability of the beam in $T=6.5$.
It is observed that when $\frac{l}{h}>10$, then for simultaneous satisfaction of the inequalities (2.86) and (2.87) for at least one $T>0$ it is necessary that $\frac{P_{0}}{E h^{2}} \alpha^{2}<2.98 \cdot 10^{-4}$ corresponding to infinitesimal strains. For smaller values of the last fraction, there exist several values of $T$ for

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS



Figure 2.2: Plots of $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}$ and $\tilde{\varepsilon}_{1 T}$ against $T$
which (2.86) and (2.87) are satisfied simultaneously. On the other hand, considering smaller values for $\frac{l}{h}$ may lead to a distortion in the EulerBernoulli assumptions and make the beam model above invalid.

A more comprehensive analysis requires direct verification of (2.86) and (2.87). However, computations show that when $P_{0} \sim 10^{5}$, then $w \sim 10^{-5}$ when the load is active and $w \sim 10^{-9}$ when it vanishes (see Fig. 2.9). Therefore the required precision must be at least $\varepsilon \sim 10^{-10}$. On the other hand, the residual axial stress arising in the beam after the load vanishes accepts larger values and can serve as a controllability criterion. Thus, as a residue consider the quantity

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overline{\mathcal{R}}_{T}(u)=\left|\left|E \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}}\right|_{t=T}-\sigma_{0} \|_{L^{2}[0, l]}\right. \tag{2.88}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\sigma_{x}(x, T)=\left.E \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}}\right|_{t=T}, \quad x \in[0, l]
$$

is the axial stress of the beam evaluated at $t=T$ and $\sigma_{0}$ is a prescribed
threshold value. Thus, $\overline{\mathcal{R}}_{T}$ evaluates how close the axial stress is to a given threshold at the instant $T$.

For a more specific analysis, consider a beam of length $l=1 \mathrm{~m}^{13}$ and of a square cross-section with dimensions $0.1 \mathrm{~m} \times 0.1 \mathrm{~m}$. Therefore

$$
J=\frac{b^{4}}{12} \approx 8.3 \cdot 10^{-6} \mathrm{~m}^{4}
$$

Let the material of the beam be made from copper, i.e., $E=1.1 \cdot 10^{11}$ $\mathrm{N} / \mathrm{m}^{2}, \rho=8960 \mathrm{~kg} / \mathrm{m}^{3}$. Limit the computations to the case when $x_{0}=\frac{l}{2}$ (recall Remark 2.11). Assume that

$$
P(t)=P_{0} \sin (\pi t)\left[\theta(t-0)-\theta\left(t-T_{0}\right)\right],
$$

with $T_{0}=1 \mathrm{~s}$. Set $T=1.2 \mathrm{~s}$.
Note that the maximal value of $\sigma_{x}(x, T)=300 \mathrm{~N} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ (see Fig. 2.10 (right)). In order to reduce this value, the threshold value is set to $\sigma_{0}=200 \mathrm{~N} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$ and the optimal stopping boundary control regime

$$
u(t)=u^{o}\left[\theta(t-0)-\theta\left(t-t^{o}\right)\right] \sin \left(\omega_{1} t+\omega_{2}\right)
$$

is chosen to ensure the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overline{\mathcal{R}}_{T}(u) \leq \varepsilon \tag{2.89}
\end{equation*}
$$

for (2.88) with the precision $\varepsilon=10^{-5}$. Above, $u^{o}, t^{o}, \omega_{1}$, and $\omega_{2}$ are free parameters. At this, $t^{o}$ is constrained by $0<t^{o} \leq T$. Then, the

[^24]
## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

inequality (2.89) holds with $\varepsilon=10^{-5}$ when

$$
u^{o}=10^{-9}, \quad \omega_{1}=1, \quad \omega_{2}=0, \quad t^{o}=0.85 .
$$

Moreover, Fig. 2.11 shows that besides ensuring (2.89), the considered control regime reduces the total displacement of the beam almost twice.

Consider now the switching regime

$$
u(t)=u_{1}\left[\theta(t-0)-\theta\left(t-t_{1}\right)\right]+u_{2}\left[\theta\left(t-t_{2}\right)-\theta\left(t-t_{3}\right)\right],
$$

where $u_{1}, u_{2}, t_{1}, t_{2}$, and $t_{3}$ are free parameters. Let the threshold value in this case be $\sigma_{0}=150 \mathrm{~N} / \mathrm{m}^{2}$. Then,

$$
u_{1}=u_{2}=10^{-9}, \quad t_{1}=0.25, \quad t_{2}=0.4, \quad t_{3}=0.65,
$$

provide (2.89) with $\varepsilon=10^{-5}$. Note that the total displacement in this case is also reduced almost twice (see Fig. 2.12).

### 2.4.4 Square Heated from the Boundary

Let a sufficiently thin square sheet which occupies in the Cartesian coordinate system $O x y$ the flat domain $\Omega=[0, a] \times[0, a]$ be heated from its boundary. Assume that the upper and lower surfaces of the sheet are thermo-isolated, so that the heat is exchanged exceptionally within the plate. The aim of the control is to determine a heating regime at the boundary such that the temperature distribution in the sheet in a required finite time $T$ becomes uniform and admits a given constant value.

The heat distribution in the sheet in time, denoted here by $\Theta$, is described by the two-dimensional heat equation

$$
\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t}=d \Delta \Theta \text { in } \Omega \times \mathbb{R}^{+},
$$

where $d$ is the thermal diffusivity of the sheet material. The boundary conditions are

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \Theta(x, 0, t)=\Theta(x, a, t)=u_{b}(t) v(x) \text { in }[0, a] \times \mathbb{R}^{+}, \\
& \Theta(0, y, t)=\Theta(a, y, t)=u_{b}(t) v(y) \text { in }[0, a] \times \mathbb{R}^{+} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Here $v$ is the distribution of the heaters along the sheet edges, satisfying $v>0$ and $\operatorname{supp}(v) \subseteq[0, a]$. The case $v \equiv 1$ corresponds to the uniform distribution of the heaters along the boundary ${ }^{14}$.

The initial temperature distribution in the square sheet is given by

$$
\Theta(x, y, 0)=\Theta_{0}(x, y) \text { in } \Omega .
$$

[^25]
## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

Mathematically, the problem is to find such a boundary control $u_{b} \in$ $\mathcal{U}$, that in the required time $T$ provides a uniform terminal temperature distribution

$$
\Theta(x, y, T) \equiv \Theta_{T}=\text { const in } \Omega
$$

exactly or approximately for a given $\Theta_{T}$. In other words, it is required to find such an admissible control $u_{b} \in \mathcal{U}$, that the residue

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right)=\left\|\Theta(x, y, T)-\Theta_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)}
$$

satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right)=0 \tag{2.90}
\end{equation*}
$$

or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}\left(u_{b}\right) \leq \varepsilon \tag{2.91}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a required precision $\varepsilon>0$.
The control function is constrained by the compatibility of the initial, terminal, and boundary data, implying

$$
\begin{align*}
& u_{b}(0) v(x)=\Theta_{0}(x, 0)=\Theta_{0}(x, a) \text { in }[0, a] \text {, } \\
& u_{b}(0) v(y)=\Theta_{0}(0, y)=\Theta_{0}(a, y) \text { in }[0, a] \text {, }  \tag{2.92}\\
& u_{b}(T)=\Theta_{T} .
\end{align*}
$$

In general, (2.92) makes sense only in the case when

$$
\frac{\Theta_{0}(x, 0)}{v(x)}=\frac{\Theta_{0}(x, a)}{v(x)}=\frac{\Theta_{0}(0, y)}{v(y)}=\frac{\Theta_{0}(a, y)}{v(y)}=\text { const }:=\Theta_{00} \text { in } \partial \Omega .
$$

Then, (2.92) provides

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{b}(0)=\Theta_{00}, \quad u_{b}(T)=\Theta_{T} . \tag{2.93}
\end{equation*}
$$

As a set of admissible controls consider

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{u \in L^{2}[0, T],|u| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq[0, T],(2.93)\right\} .
$$

In this case, the Green's formula evaluated at $t=T$ results in

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Theta(x, y, T) & =\int_{\Omega} \Theta_{0}(\xi, \eta) G(x, \xi, y, \eta, T) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \eta+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, y, T-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text { in } \bar{\Omega},
\end{aligned}
$$

where [77]

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \begin{aligned}
G(x, \xi, y, \eta, t) & =\frac{4}{a^{2}} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \varphi_{m}(x) \varphi_{m}(\xi) \varphi_{n}(y) \varphi_{n}(\eta) \psi_{m n}(t) \\
G_{b}(x, y, t) & =d \int_{\Omega} G(x, y, \xi, \eta, t)\left[v(\eta) \delta^{\prime}(\xi-a)-v(\eta) \delta^{\prime}(\xi)+\right. \\
& \left.+v(\xi) \delta^{\prime}(\eta-a)-v(\xi) \delta^{\prime}(\eta)\right] \mathrm{d} \eta \mathrm{~d} \xi= \\
& =\left.d \int_{0}^{a} v(\eta) \frac{\partial G(x, y, \xi, \eta, t)}{\partial \xi}\right|_{\xi=a} ^{\xi=0} \mathrm{~d} \eta+ \\
& +\left.d \int_{0}^{a} v(\xi) \frac{\partial G(x, y, \xi, \eta, t)}{\partial \eta}\right|_{\eta=a} ^{\eta=0} \mathrm{~d} \xi= \\
& =\frac{4 \pi d}{a^{3}} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \alpha_{m n} \varphi_{m}(x) \varphi_{n}(y) \psi_{m n}(t), \\
\alpha_{m n}=m(1- & \left.(-1)^{m}\right) \gamma_{n}+n\left(1-(-1)^{n}\right) \gamma_{m}, \gamma_{n}=\int_{0}^{a} v(\eta) \varphi_{n}(\eta) \mathrm{d} \eta, \\
\varphi_{m}(x)= & \sin \left(\frac{\pi m}{a} x\right), \psi_{m n}(t)=\exp \left[-d \frac{\pi^{2}}{a^{2}}\left(m^{2}+n^{2}\right) t\right]
\end{aligned}
\end{aligned}
$$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

$$
\left.f(x)\right|_{x=a} ^{x=0}=f(0)-f(a)
$$

Since $\left\{\varphi_{m}\right\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ are orthogonal over the interval $[0, a]$, then from the final expression for $G_{b}$ it follows that (2.90) is equivalent to the infinite system

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{4 \pi d}{a^{3}} \alpha_{m n} \int_{0}^{T} \psi_{m n}(T-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=M_{T m n}, \quad m, n \in \mathbb{N}, \tag{2.94}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{gathered}
M_{T m n}=\int_{\Omega} M_{T}(x, y) \varphi_{m}(x) \varphi_{n}(y) \mathrm{d} x \mathrm{~d} y, \\
M_{T}(x, y)=\int_{\Omega} \Theta_{0}(\xi, \eta) G(x, \xi, y, \eta, T) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \eta-\Theta_{T}= \\
=\frac{4}{a^{2}} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \mu_{T m n} \varphi_{m}(x) \varphi_{n}(y)-\Theta_{T},
\end{gathered}
$$

where

$$
\mu_{T m n}=\psi_{m n}(T) \int_{\Omega} \Theta_{0}(\xi, \eta) \varphi_{m}(\xi) \varphi_{n}(\eta) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \eta .
$$

Thus,

$$
M_{T m n}=\frac{4}{a^{2}} \mu_{T m n}-\frac{a^{2} \Theta_{T}}{\pi^{2} m n}\left(1-(-1)^{m}\right)\left(1-(-1)^{n}\right) .
$$

It is evident that $M_{T m n}$ decreases very fast with individual or simultaneous increase of $m$ and $n$, which means that (2.94) can be truncated and considered for some finite $M$ and $N$. Eventually, the determination of $u_{b}$ is reduced to a finite-dimensional system of algebraic equations. For further details and particular solutions of (2.94), refer to Subsection 2.3.1.

It is noteworthy that there might exist solutions of (2.94), which do
not satisfy (2.93). Indeed, assume that $\Theta_{T}=0$, and

$$
\Theta_{0}(x, y)=\varphi_{M}(x) \varphi_{M}(y), \quad v=\varphi_{M},
$$

for a fixed odd $M$. Then

$$
\alpha_{m n}=4 M \delta_{m}^{M} \delta_{n}^{M}, \quad M_{T m n}=\frac{4}{a^{2}} \mu_{T m n}=\frac{4}{a^{2}} \psi_{M M}(T) \delta_{m}^{M} \delta_{n}^{M},
$$

and therefore (2.94) consists of only one equation

$$
\int_{0}^{T} \psi_{M M}(-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=\frac{a}{\pi M d}
$$

Here it is taken into account that

$$
\psi_{M M}(T-\tau)=\psi_{M M}(T) \cdot \psi_{M M}(-\tau)
$$

Evidently, the function

$$
u_{b}(t)=u^{o} \cdot \psi_{M M}(t) \quad \text { with } \quad u^{o}=\frac{a}{\pi M T d},
$$

belongs to $L^{2}[0, T]$ and satisfies the equation above, but it does not ensure the exact controllability of the plate, since the second condition in (2.93) is satisfied exactly only when $T \rightarrow \infty$.

On the other hand, for the approximate null-controllability of the square, it is necessary and sufficient that the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\|\int_{0}^{T} G_{b}(x, y, T-\tau) u_{b}(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau+M_{T}(x, y)\right\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)} \leq \varepsilon \tag{2.95}
\end{equation*}
$$

holds on $\mathcal{U}$. Then, by virtue of the Minkowski and Cauchy-Schwartz

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

inequalities, the fulfillment of the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau)\left|u_{b}(\tau)\right| \mathrm{d} \tau \leq \varepsilon-\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)} \tag{2.96}
\end{equation*}
$$

for at least one $u_{b} \in \mathcal{U}$ is sufficient for the fulfillment of (2.95) as far as

$$
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}=\varepsilon-\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)} \geq 0
$$

Here

$$
g(t)=\left\|G_{b}(x, y, t)\right\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)}=\frac{2 \pi d}{a^{2}} \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} \alpha_{m n}^{2} \psi_{m n}^{2}(t)}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|M_{T}\right\|_{L^{2}(\Omega)} & =\sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} M_{T m n}^{2}\left\|\varphi_{m}\right\|_{L^{2}[0, a]}^{2}\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L^{2}[0, a]}^{2}}= \\
& =\frac{a}{2} \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sum_{m=1}^{\infty} M_{T m n}^{2}}
\end{aligned}
$$

In the derivation above, the summation formula (2.59) and

$$
\left\|\varphi_{n}\right\|_{L^{2}[0, a]}^{2}=\frac{a}{2}
$$

are taken into account.

In that case, any admissible control satisfying

$$
u_{b} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{r e s}=\left\{u \in \mathcal{U}, \quad|u| \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}}{\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}}\right\}
$$

with

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{T}=\int_{0}^{T} g(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

is a resolving control ensuring the approximate null-controllability of the square.

Particular solutions presented in Subsection 2.3.2 can be involved to satisfy (2.96).

For numerical analysis let

$$
a=0.1, \quad v \equiv 1, \quad \Theta_{0}(x, y)=10 \varphi_{1}(x) \varphi_{1}(y), \quad \Theta_{T}=0, \quad \varepsilon=10^{-3} .
$$

In addition, assume that the material of the square is made from copper. Then, the inequality

$$
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}=\varepsilon-\frac{20}{a} \exp \left[-2 d \frac{\pi^{2}}{a^{2}} T\right] \geq 0
$$

holds for $T \geq 57$.
It turns out that involving the constant control regime with $u^{o}=$ $-10^{-4}$, it is possible to provide the approximate null-controllability of the square in $T=150$ (see Fig. 2.13).

For achieving a higher precision for less $T$, control regimes other than constant can be involved. Indeed, involving the quasi-polynomial regime (2.39), the approximate null-controllability of the square can be ensured for $T=120$ (see Fig. 2.14).

On the other hand, the trigonometric regime (2.41) can provide a smaller value for the residue in (2.91), but for larger $T$. Specifically, (2.41) with $u^{o}=10^{-4}, m=7$ and $n=1.5$ provides $\mathcal{R}_{T} \leq 3 \cdot 10^{-4}$ in $T=180$ (see Fig. 2.15).

The residue (2.53) is evaluated for the control regimes considered

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

above (see Tab. 2.2). The smallest value for the residue guarantees the trigonometric control regime, but in $T=180$. On the other hand, the quasi-polynomial control regime provides $\mathcal{R}_{T} \leq 3.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ for $T=120$.

| Control regime | Residue | Control time |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Constant | $9 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 150 |
| Quasi-polynomial | $3.5 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 120 |
| Trigonometric | $3 \cdot 10^{-4}$ | 180 |

Table 2.2: Residue (2.91) for different control regimes



Figure 2.3: Initial (left) and implemented terminal (right) distributions of temperature in the rod with $\chi(x)=\exp (\alpha x)$ when $u_{b} \equiv 10^{-4}$


Figure 2.4: Implemented terminal state (left) for quasi-polynomial control regime (right) with $u^{o}=5 \cdot 10^{-7}, m=n=1$

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS




Figure 2.5: Implemented terminal state (left) for trigonometric control regime (right) with $u^{o}=9 \cdot 10^{-4}, m=3, n=1$



Figure 2.6: Implemented terminal state (left) for switching control regime (right) with $u^{o}=2 \cdot 10^{-5}, t_{1}=25, t_{2}=30, t_{3}=45, t_{4}=50$, $t_{5}=65, t_{6}=70$


Figure 2.7: Implemented terminal state (left) for the switching control regime (2.73) (right)



Figure 2.8: Implemented terminal state (left) for the switching control regime (2.74) (right)

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS

Total displacement (m) at $\mathrm{t}=0.5 \mathrm{~s}$


Total displacement $(\mathrm{m})$ at $\mathrm{t}=1.2 \mathrm{~s}$


Figure 2.9: Maximal uncontrolled displacement at $t=0.5 \mathrm{~s}$ (left) and at $t=T$ (right)


Axial stress $\left(\mathrm{N} / \mathrm{m}^{2}\right)$ at $\mathrm{t}=1.2 \mathrm{~s}$


Figure 2.10: Maximal uncontrolled axial stress at $t=0.5 \mathrm{~s}$ (left) and at $t=T$ (right)


Figure 2.11: Controlled total displacement (left) and axial stress of the beam at $t=T$ : optimal stopping control


Figure 2.12: Controlled total displacement (left) and axial stress of the beam at $t=T$ : switching control

## 2. LINEAR SYSTEMS



Figure 2.13: Initial (left) and implemented terminal (right) distributions of temperature in the square when $u_{b} \equiv-10^{-4}$


Figure 2.14: Implemented terminal state (left) for quasi-polynomial control regime (right) with $u^{o}=-10^{-5}, m=0.75$ and $n=1$


Figure 2.15: Implemented terminal state (left) for trigonometric control regime (right) with $u^{o}=10^{-4}, m=7$ and $n=1.5$

## 3

## Nonlinear Systems

Nonlinear models generally describe real-life phenomena more precisely than linear ones. Moreover, in some cases linear models can become totally useless. That is why in modern control theory primary attention is paid to the control of nonlinear models. Numerical methods for nonlinear models are more costly, therefore making explicit solutions especially worthwhile. As it was shown in Section 1.3, a kind of Green's representation formula is valid for an exact (Cacuci's approach) and approximate (Frasca's approach) solution of nonlinear models. The latter is used below for the derivation of approximate controllability conditions for nonlinear systems with specific dynamics.

This chapter is organized as follows. The problem is described in Section 3.1 and the resolving constraints are obtained in Section 3.2. Particular nonlinear systems are studied on approximate controllability in Section 3.3. The exact and approximate controllability of Burgers' equation is studied in Section 3.4 using exact linearization.

### 3.1 Problem Statement

Consider the simplest problem about providing a given terminal state in a given finite time for a system with nonlinear dynamics of a specific form. Let the system be governed by the second order ordinary nonlinear differential equation (cf. (1.26))

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d^{2} \boldsymbol{w}}{d t^{2}}+\boldsymbol{N}(\boldsymbol{w}, t)=\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, t) \quad \text { in } \quad \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

subjected to the Cauchy condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{I}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{b} \text { at } t=0 \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Above, $\boldsymbol{N}: \mathbf{W} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a generic nonlinear vector-function, $\boldsymbol{f}: \mathbf{U} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a given vector-function representing the controller influence on the system, and $\boldsymbol{w}_{b} \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$ is a given constant vector.

The system (3.1) is a reduced version of nonlinear partial differential equations that are linear in $\frac{\partial^{2} \tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}}{\partial t^{2}}$. Indeed, using the generalized separation of variables, the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial^{2} \tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}}{\partial t^{2}}+\tilde{\boldsymbol{N}}\left(\frac{\partial^{k} \tilde{\boldsymbol{w}}}{\partial \boldsymbol{x}^{k}}, \boldsymbol{x}, t\right)=\tilde{\boldsymbol{f}}(\boldsymbol{u}, \boldsymbol{x}, t), \quad k=0,1, \ldots, \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

in principle can be reduced to $(3.1)$. See $[103,104]$ for details.
In the general treatment, if the variable $t$ represents the time, systems like (3.3) describe wave phenomena in different media. That is why they are often referred to as oscillating systems.

The set of admissible controls is considered to be

$$
\mathcal{U}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathbf{U},|\boldsymbol{u}| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(\boldsymbol{u}) \subseteq[0, T]\} .
$$

Mathematically, the problem is to find such admissible controls $\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U}$ that provide the terminal condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \quad \text { at } \quad t=T, \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

in a given finite time $T$ for a prescribed constant vector $\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \in \mathbb{R}^{m}$.
The exact or approximate controllability in this case is verified in terms of the residue

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=\left|\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right|
$$

The nature of exact and approximate controllability described in Chapter 2 for linear systems applies here as well. Here,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})=0 \text { on } \mathcal{U} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

implies exact controllability, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u}) \leq \varepsilon \text { on } \mathcal{U} \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a given precision $\varepsilon>0$ implies approximate controllability.
In this chapter, only the case when

$$
\mathcal{T}[\boldsymbol{w}]=\boldsymbol{w}(T)
$$

is considered. The solution procedure can be adapted correspondingly.

### 3.2 Resolving System

To simplify the derivations, assume that the Cauchy condition (3.2) is of the form

$$
\boldsymbol{w}(0)=0,\left.\quad \frac{d \boldsymbol{w}}{d t}\right|_{t=0}=0
$$

Then, the solution of (3.1) can be approximated by the formal Green's representation formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{w}(t) \approx \int_{0}^{t} \boldsymbol{G}(t, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \text { in } \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Following the algorithm described in Section 1.4, evaluate the solution at $t=T$ and substitute into the residue to derive

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u}) \approx\left|\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}(T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right| .
$$

Then, the exact satisfaction of (3.5) is equivalent to the system of restrictions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}(T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=\boldsymbol{w}_{T} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case, the set of resolving controls will be

$$
\mathcal{U}_{\text {res }}=\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U},(3.8)\} .
$$

The particular solutions obtained in Subsection 2.3.1 can be involved for explicit representation of the resolving controls.

However, note that since (3.7) is only an approximation to the solution of the nonlinear system (3.1), (3.2), then, in general, for every admissible control $u \in \mathcal{U}$ and any terminal state (3.4) the residue sat-
isfies

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(\boldsymbol{u})>0
$$

In other words, even the exact solution of (3.8) ensures the approximate controllability of the system.

On the other hand, since the triangle inequality provides the estimate

$$
\left|\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}(T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau-\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right| \leq\left|\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}(T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau\right|+\left|\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right|
$$

then, obviously, the inequality

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left|\int_{0}^{T} \boldsymbol{G}(T, \tau) \boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, \tau) \mathrm{d} \tau\right| \leq \varepsilon-\left|\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right| \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

will be sufficient for approximate controllability of the system, as soon as

$$
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}=\varepsilon-\left|\boldsymbol{w}_{T}\right| \geq 0
$$

Note that, for instance, in the case of approximate null-controllability, the last inequality always holds true.

Furthermore, assuming that for a given constant $\epsilon_{0}>0$

$$
|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, t)| \leq \epsilon_{0} \quad \text { in } \mathcal{U} \times \mathbb{R}^{+}
$$

then from the left-hand side of (3.9) it can be derived that

$$
\tilde{\epsilon}_{0} \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}}{g_{T}}
$$

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

where

$$
g_{T}=\int_{0}^{T}|\boldsymbol{G}(T, \tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

is sufficient for the approximate controllability of the system. In other words, any admissible control satisfying

$$
\boldsymbol{u} \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{\boldsymbol{u} \in \mathcal{U},|\boldsymbol{f}(\boldsymbol{u}, t)| \leq \tilde{\epsilon}_{0}\right\},
$$

ensures the approximate controllability of the system. For the explicit determination of the resolving controls in this case, the particular solutions obtained in Subsection 2.3.2 can be involved.

Remark 3.1. In general, the solution of the system (3.8) is not unique providing opportunities for an optimal choice among the resolving controls. Usually, a cost functional of the form

$$
\mathcal{C}[u]=\int_{0}^{T} W(\boldsymbol{u}, t) \mathrm{d} t,
$$

is considered with a given density function $W$ having a specific interpretation in the particular problem under study.

### 3.3 Examples

Several particular examples are considered in this section in order to demonstrate how the proposed algorithm works in the case of nonlinear systems. For simplicity, the consideration is limited to the one-dimensional case. In addition, it is supposed that the systems are linear in controls. All the studied systems and their Green's functions are borrowed from existing references (see Section 1.3).

### 3.3.1 Pendulum with Cubic Non-Linearity

Consider in (3.1) the cubic non-linearity

$$
N(w, t)=w^{3} .
$$

In this case, the approximation (3.7) evaluated at $t=T$ implies

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(T) \approx \int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where (see Subsection 1.3.2)

$$
G(t)=2^{\frac{1}{4}} \theta(t) \cdot \mathrm{sn}\left[2^{-\frac{1}{4}} t, i\right] .
$$

The aim of the control is to determine admissible controls providing (3.5) or (3.6) for the given $T$ and $w_{T}{ }^{1}$. First, consider the constant regime (2.36) with

$$
u^{o}=w_{T} .
$$

[^26]
## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

In this case, the quantity

$$
\Delta(T)=1-\int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

measures the error between the desired and implemented terminal states. Fig. 3.1 (left) shows that $\Delta$ is a periodic function of $T$. Moreover, in the case of constant control $u^{o}=w_{T}$, there exist four different values of $T$ in the range $T \in(1,10)$, for which $\Delta \equiv 0$. Namely, $T=1.37$, $T=3.88, T=6.61$ and $T=9.12$. Note again that even though the equality holds exactly, it still implies the approximate controllability of the system.

Consider now the constant control regime with $u^{o}=\alpha w_{T}, \alpha \in \mathbb{R}$. Evidently, the case

$$
\alpha=\frac{1}{I(T)},
$$

trivially defines resolving controls ensuring approximate controllability of the system. Moreover, computations show that the integral

$$
I(T)=\int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

is non-negative for all $T \in[1,10]$ (see Fig. 3.1 (right)), which means that when $\alpha \leq 0$, it follows that $\Delta(T)>1$. Therefore, in that case the system is not approximately controllable. Thus, the system is approximately controllable if and only if

$$
\alpha \geq \frac{1}{I(T)} .
$$

When the case of the harmonic control (2.37) with $u^{o}=\alpha w_{T}$, $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, is considered, the error between the desired and implemented


Figure 3.1: Dependence $\Delta$ (left) and $I$ (right) against the control time $T$ for a constant control $u^{o}=w_{T}$
terminal states becomes

$$
\Delta(T)=1-\alpha \int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) \sin (\omega \tau+\gamma) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

The aim is to find such real triples $(\alpha, \omega, \gamma)$ for which

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u) \approx|\Delta(T)| \leq \varepsilon
$$

with a given precision $\varepsilon$.
Computations show that the integral

$$
I(T)=\int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) \sin (\omega \tau+\gamma) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

satisfies

$$
|I(T)| \leq 3
$$

in the range $T \in[1,10]$ for all couples $(\omega, \gamma)$ (see Fig. 3.2 (right)).

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

Therefore, the fulfillment of the equality

$$
\Delta(T)=0
$$

is possible, i.e., the system is approximately controllable if and only if

$$
|\alpha| \geq \frac{1}{3} .
$$

Without loss of generality assume that $\alpha=1$. Then, for instance, in the case when $\omega=\frac{\pi}{2}, \gamma=0$, the equation $\Delta(T)=0$ has four roots (see Fig. 3.2 (left)): $T=1.77, T=2.72, T=5.89$ and $T=7.69$.


Figure 3.2: Dependence of $\Delta$ (left) and $I$ (right) against the control time $T$ for the harmonic control with $u^{o}=w_{T}, \omega=\frac{\pi}{2}, \gamma=0$

In some physical problems, the usage of the switching or piecewise constant control regimes (2.43) may be required. Let the control consist of 3 modes, i.e.,

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=u_{1} \theta\left(t-t_{1}\right)+u_{2} \theta\left(t-t_{2}\right)+u_{3} \theta\left(t-t_{3}\right) . \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

The aim is to find such constants $\left\{u_{n}, t_{n}\right\}_{n=1}^{3}$, partially restricted by the constraint

$$
0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2}<t_{3} \leq T
$$

that the error between the desired and implemented terminal states, which is evaluated by

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta(T)=1 & -\int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau)\left[u_{1} \theta\left(\tau-t_{1}\right)+\right. \\
& \left.+u_{2} \theta\left(\tau-t_{2}\right)+u_{3} \theta\left(\tau-t_{3}\right)\right] \mathrm{d} \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

satisfies

$$
\Delta(T)=0 \quad \text { or } \quad|\Delta(T)| \leq \varepsilon
$$

for a given $\varepsilon$.
By the definition of the Heaviside function

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Delta(T) & =1-u_{1} \int_{t_{1}}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau-u_{2} \int_{t_{2}}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau- \\
& -u_{3} \int_{t_{3}}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that since the integrals

$$
I_{n}(T)=\int_{t_{n}}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau, \quad n=1,2,3
$$

are non-negative (see Fig. 3.3), one possible solution of $\Delta(T)=0$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{1}=\frac{1}{I_{1}(T)}, \quad u_{2}=\frac{1}{I_{2}(T)}, \quad u_{3}=-\frac{1}{I_{3}(T)} \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

for arbitrary $T$. At this, $t_{1}, t_{2}$, and $t_{3}$ may be fixed.

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS



Figure 3.3: Dependence of $I_{n}$ against the control time $T$ for the switching control with $t_{1}=1, t_{2}=2, t_{3}=3$

Excluding from consideration the cases when $T=6.24$ for which $u_{1} \rightarrow \infty$, and $T=7.24$ for which $u_{2} \rightarrow \infty$, for any $T \geq t_{3}$ the system is approximate controllable for (3.11) with (3.12). Let $T=4$, then (3.12) provides $u_{1}=0.56, u_{2}=0.61$ and $u_{3}=-1.74$. Moreover, it is evident from Fig. 3.4 that in that case the equation $\Delta(T)=0$ has four roots when $T \in[1,10]$. Other solutions are also possible.

Wide physical applications also have the discrete control regime (2.47). The filtering property of the Dirac function considerably sim-


Figure 3.4: Dependence of $\Delta$ against the control time $T$ for the switching control
plifies the analysis. Indeed, let

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=u_{1} \delta\left(t-t_{1}\right)+u_{2} \delta\left(t-t_{2}\right)+u_{3} \delta\left(t-t_{3}\right), \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
0 \leq t_{1}<t_{2}<t_{3} \leq T
$$

Then, by virtue of the filtering property of the Dirac function the error takes the simple form

$$
\Delta(T)=1-u_{1} G\left(T-t_{1}\right)-u_{2} G\left(T-t_{2}\right)-u_{3} G\left(T-t_{3}\right) .
$$

Obviously, the regime (3.13) with

$$
\begin{equation*}
u_{1}=\frac{1}{G\left(T-t_{1}\right)}, \quad u_{2}=\frac{1}{G\left(T-t_{2}\right)}, \quad u_{3}=-\frac{1}{G\left(T-t_{3}\right)}, \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

satisfies $\Delta(T)=0$ for all $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$, and $T \geq t_{3}$, i.e., any discrete control (3.13) with (3.14) ensures the approximate controllability of the system

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

for arbitrary $T>t_{3}$, excluded perhaps the finitely many isolated points where

$$
I_{n}(T)=G\left(T-t_{n}\right)=0, \quad n=1,2,3
$$

(see Fig. 3.5 (left)). In particular, fixing $t_{1}=1, t_{2}=2, t_{3}=3$ and $T=4$, it is obtained that

$$
u_{1}=-2.23, \quad u_{2}=1.37, \quad u_{3}=0.93
$$

Moreover, Fig. 3.5 (right) shows that the equation $\Delta(T)=0$ has three roots when $T \in[1,10]$.


Figure 3.5: Dependence of $I_{n}$ (left) and $\Delta$ (right) against the control time $T$ for the discrete control

### 3.3.2 Sine-Gordon Equation

Now consider the case when

$$
N(w, t)=\sin w,
$$

which corresponds to the space-reduced sine-Gordon equation. In this case (see Subsection 1.3.2)

$$
G(t)=2 \theta(t) \cdot \mathrm{am}\left[\frac{t}{\sqrt{2}}, \sqrt{2}\right] .
$$

Considering the constant control regime

$$
u^{o}=\alpha w_{T}
$$

for $\alpha \in \mathbb{R}$, the error takes the form

$$
\Delta(T)=1-\alpha \int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau .
$$

Since the integral

$$
I(T)=\int_{0}^{T} G(T-\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

is non-negative (see Fig. 3.6 (left)), the equation $\Delta(T)=0$ has roots when $T \in[1,10]$ if and only if

$$
\alpha \geq \frac{1}{I(T)} .
$$

Moreover,

$$
\alpha=\frac{1}{I(T)}
$$

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

ensures the approximate controllability of the system for arbitrary $T \in$ [ 1,10$]$. Furthermore, in some cases, the equation $\Delta(T)=0$ may have more than one root. Specifically, when $\alpha=1$, the function $\Delta(T)$ turns to zero in $[1,10]$ twice: $T=1.24$ and $T=8.68$ (see Fig. 3.6 (right)).


Figure 3.6: Dependence $\Delta$ (left) and $I$ (right) against control time $T$ for constant control with $\alpha=1$

The analysis for other control regimes is similar to that performed in Subsection 3.3.1.

### 3.3.3 Approximation Error Analysis

In order to estimate how efficient the approximation (3.7) is in controllability analysis, a comparison between the derived solution and numerical solution of the state equation with predetermined right-hand side is carried out. To this end the Green's formula (3.7) for particular forms of $N$ considered in Subsections 3.3.1 and 3.3.2 is evaluated at $t=T$. Here $T$ resolves the corresponding equation $\Delta(T)=0$. In the case when it has several roots, only the smallest root is considered.

For the analysis, the scaling parameter introduced in (1.29) turns to be very efficient. The relative errors are given in Tab. 3.1 and 3.2.

| Control regime | Relative error | Scaling factor |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Constant | $1.9 \cdot 10^{-5}$ | -2.38 |
| Harmonic | $2.7 \cdot 10^{-5}$ | -4.12 |
| Switching | $7 \cdot 10^{-6}$ | 0.85 |
| Discrete | $7.1 \cdot 10^{-6}$ | -0.89 |

Table 3.1: Relative error measures of approximation (3.7) for $N(w, t)=w^{3}$

| Control regime | Relative error | Scaling factor |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Constant | $7.9 \cdot 10^{-7}$ | -1.34 |
| Harmonic | $6.5 \cdot 10^{-9}$ | -6.305 |
| Switching | $2.4 \cdot 10^{-6}$ | -1.58 |
| Discrete | $4.3 \cdot 10^{-5}$ | $1.5 \cdot 10^{-3}$ |

Table 3.2: Relative error measures of approximation (3.7) for $N(w, t)=\sin w$

### 3.4 Burgers' Equation

There is a large class of nonlinear ordinary and partial differential equations that can be exactly linearized using special algebraic transformations (some of them can be found, for example, in [199-203] and references therein). If the state equation of a system under study is nonlinear, but can be exactly linearized by such a transformation, then the general solution of the linearized equation can be represented via the Green's representation formula and therefore the controllability analysis of the system can be carried out as it was described in Section 1.4. Such transformations exist for various equations in physics and mechanics [75]. The procedure is demonstrated on the well known Burgers' equation below.

The so-called Hopf-Cole transformation

$$
\begin{equation*}
w=-2 d \frac{1}{\Theta} \frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x} \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

proposed in [204] and [205] independently, allows the nonlinear Burgers' equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial w}{\partial t}+w \frac{\partial w}{\partial x}=d \frac{\partial^{2} w}{\partial x^{2}} \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

to be reduced to the linear heat equation

$$
\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t}=d \frac{\partial^{2} \Theta}{\partial x^{2}}
$$

The Burgers' equation arises in various branches of applied mathematics and mechanics, such as fluid mechanics and turbulence, nonlinear acoustics, gas dynamics, traffic flow: the coefficient $d$ is treated accordingly.

Consider the Burgers' equation (3.16) in $\mathbb{R}$. Let at the initial instant $t=0$ it be given that

$$
w(x, 0)=w_{0}(x) \quad \text { in } \mathbb{R},
$$

where $w_{0} \in L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$ is a given function. Then, the evaluation of (3.15) at $t=0$ provides the following initial condition ${ }^{2}$ for $\Theta$ :

$$
\Theta(x, 0)=\exp \left[-\frac{1}{2 d} \int_{-\infty}^{x} w_{0}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi\right]:=\Theta_{0}(x) \text { in } \mathbb{R} .
$$

Here it is taken into account that

$$
\left.\frac{\partial \Theta(x, t)}{\partial x}\right|_{t=0}=\frac{\partial \Theta(x, 0)}{\partial x}
$$

Consider now the non-homogeneous heat equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial t}=d \frac{\partial^{2} \Theta}{\partial x^{2}}+f(x, t) \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

in the particular case when the source function is given by

$$
f(x, t)=u(t) v(x) .
$$

Here, as usual, $u$ denotes the control function, and $v$ denotes its distribution on $x$-axis.

Let the problem be in explicit representation of admissible controls $u \in \mathcal{U}$ with

$$
\mathcal{U}=\left\{u \in L^{\infty}[0, T],|u| \leq \epsilon, \operatorname{supp}(u) \subseteq[0, T]\right\},
$$

[^27]
## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

for which within a required time $T$ the terminal state

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(x, T)=w_{T}(x) \text { in } \mathbb{R} \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

is provided for (3.15) exactly or approximately for a desired $w_{T} \in$ $L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})$. In other words, the problem is to find a distributed control $u \in \mathcal{U}$, such that for the given $T$, the residue

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u)=\left\|w(x, T)-w_{T}(x)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}
$$

defined for (3.15) evaluated on the solution of (3.17) satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u)=0, \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

or if that is not the case

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u) \leq \varepsilon \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

with a given precision $\varepsilon>0$.

Since (3.15) provides an explicit dependence of $w$ on $u$, the approach described in Section 1.4 can be applied. The general solution of (3.17) is given by the Green's formula (see Section 1.2) as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
\Theta(x, t) & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Theta_{0}(\xi) G(x-\xi, t) \mathrm{d} \xi+ \\
& +\int_{0}^{t} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(\xi, \tau) G(x-\xi, t-\tau) \mathrm{d} \xi \mathrm{~d} \tau \text { in } \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} \tag{3.21}
\end{align*}
$$

Here $G$ is the Green's function of (3.17), defined as [77]

$$
G(x, t)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{4 \pi d t}} \exp \left[-\frac{x^{2}}{4 d t}\right] .
$$

Then, the controlled flow will be given in terms of (3.21) as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(x, t)=-\frac{2 d}{\Theta(x, t)} \frac{\partial \Theta(x, t)}{\partial x} \text { in } \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}^{+} . \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Straightforward calculations allow $\mathcal{R}_{T}$ to be expressed in terms of $\Theta$. Indeed, by denoting

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Theta_{T}(x)=\exp \left[-\frac{1}{2 d} \int_{-\infty}^{x} w_{T}(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi\right], \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $w_{T}$ is given by (3.18), and evaluating the solution (3.22) at the terminal instant $t=T, \mathcal{R}_{T}$ can be transformed to

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u) & =\left\|w(x, T)-w_{T}(x)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}= \\
& =2 d\left\|\frac{1}{\Theta(x, T)} \frac{\partial \Theta(x, T)}{\partial x}-\frac{1}{\Theta_{T}(x)} \frac{d \Theta_{T}(x)}{d x}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}= \\
& =2 d\left\|\left.\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \ln \right\rvert\, \frac{\Theta(x, T)}{\Theta_{T}(x)}\right\| \|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, according to the definition of norm, (3.19) is equivalent to

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \ln \left|\frac{\Theta(x, T)}{\Theta_{T}(x)}\right|=0 \text { a.e. in } \mathbb{R} .
$$

The integration with respect to $x$ once leads to

$$
\frac{\Theta(x, T)}{\Theta_{T}(x)}=c,
$$

where $c$ is an arbitrary constant. Therefore, considering the residue

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_{T}(u)=\left\|\Theta(x, T)-\Theta_{T}(x)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} \tag{3.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

with $\Theta_{T}$ defined as in (3.23), it becomes obvious that the equality

$$
\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_{T}(u)=0
$$

is equivalent to (3.19). Thus, the exact controllability of the Burgers' equation is equivalent to the exact controllability of the linear heat equation.

For computations assume that

$$
w_{0} \equiv 0, \quad w_{T}(x)=\operatorname{rect}\left(\frac{x}{2}\right), \quad v(x)=\chi_{[-1,1]}(x),
$$

where $\chi_{[-1,1]}$ is the indicator function of $[-1,1]$, and rect is the rectangular function. Then,

$$
\Theta_{0} \equiv 1, \quad \Theta_{T}(x)=\exp \left[-\frac{1}{2 d}[(x+1) \theta(x+1)-(x-1) \theta(x-1)]\right] .
$$

Following the algorithm of Section 1.4, (3.21) is evaluated at $t=T$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\Theta(x, T) & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(x-\xi, T) \mathrm{d} \xi+\int_{0}^{T} G_{d}(x, T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau= \\
& =\sqrt{4 d T}+\int_{0}^{T} G_{d}(x, T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau
\end{aligned}
$$

and substituted into the expression of $\tilde{\mathcal{R}}_{T}(3.24)$. Here

$$
\begin{aligned}
G_{d}(x, t) & =\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} G(x-\xi, t) v(\xi) \mathrm{d} \xi=\int_{-1}^{1} G(x-\xi, t) \mathrm{d} \xi= \\
& =\frac{1}{2}\left[\operatorname{erf}\left[\frac{x+1}{\sqrt{4 d t}}\right]-\operatorname{erf}\left[\frac{x-1}{\sqrt{4 d t}}\right]\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

First, check the possibility of the exact controllability. The resolving
equation, equivalent to (3.19) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{0}^{T} G_{d}(x, T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=\Theta_{T}(x)-\sqrt{4 d T} \text { a.e. in } \mathbb{R} \tag{3.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case $w_{T} \geq 0$ in $\mathbb{R}$, meaning that $\Theta_{T}$ has an exponential decay in $x$. Since $G_{d}$ also has an exponential decay in $x$, it allows to consider (3.25) in $[-l, l]$ for some constant $l>1$. Expanding $G_{d}$ and $\Theta_{T}$ into Fourier series and taking into account that both are even functions, it is derived

$$
\Theta_{T}(x)=\frac{1}{2} \Theta_{T 0}+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \Theta_{T n} \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{l} x\right),
$$

with

$$
\Theta_{T n}=\frac{2}{l} \int_{0}^{l} \Theta_{T}(x) \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{l} x\right) \mathrm{d} x,
$$

and

$$
G_{d}(x, t)=\frac{1}{2} G_{d 0}(t)+\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} G_{d n}(t) \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{l} x\right),
$$

with

$$
G_{d n}(t)=\frac{2}{l} \int_{0}^{l} G_{d}(x, t) \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{l} x\right) \mathrm{d} x .
$$

The resolving system is formed by equating the coefficients of cosines' for corresponding $n$ in both sides of the equation above, resulting in

$$
\begin{align*}
& \int_{0}^{T} G_{d 0}(T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=\Theta_{T 0}-4 \sqrt{d T},  \tag{3.26}\\
& \int_{0}^{T} G_{d n}(T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau=\Theta_{T n}, \quad n \in \mathbb{N} .
\end{align*}
$$

For particular solutions of (3.26), see Subsection 2.3.1 and Remark 2.3. For simplicity, restrict the consideration of the Fourier expansions
above by $N=50$. Fig. 3.7 expresses the logarithmic error function

$$
\operatorname{Er}(x)=\log _{10}\left|\Theta_{T}(x)-\frac{1}{2} \Theta_{T 0}-\sum_{n=1}^{50} \Theta_{T n} \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{l} x\right)\right| \text { in } \quad[-l, l],
$$

for $l=2, N=50$. It is evident that $N=50$ provides a good approximation for $\Theta_{T}$. The error decreases very fast for larger $l$.


Figure 3.7: Logarithmic error of approximation of $\Theta_{T}$ by its Fourier series expansion for $N=50$

Further, in order to derive a consistent system of algebraic equations, let the control be given in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
u(t)=\frac{1}{2} u_{0}+\sum_{n=1}^{50} u_{n} \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{T} t\right), \tag{3.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $u_{n}, n=0,1, \ldots, 50$, are unknown constants that need to be determined. Substituting $u$ into the resolving system (3.25) truncated with $N=50$, the following system of linear algebraic equations is derived:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{A} \boldsymbol{u}=\boldsymbol{\Theta}_{T} \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathbf{A}=\left\{A_{m n}\right\}_{m, n=0}^{N}, \quad A_{m n}=\int_{0}^{T} G_{d m}(T-\tau) \cos \left(\frac{\pi n}{T} \tau\right) \mathrm{d} \tau \\
\boldsymbol{u}=\left\{\begin{array}{lll}
u_{0} & \ldots u_{N}
\end{array}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}, \quad \boldsymbol{\Theta}_{T}=\left\{\Theta_{T 0} \ldots \Theta_{T N}\right)^{\mathrm{T}}
\end{gathered}
$$

Solving (3.28) with respect to the unknowns $u_{n}$ and substituting them into (3.27), the absolute error between $w(x, T)$ and $w_{T}$ is plotted in Fig. 3.8 (left). The corresponding control regime is plotted as well (see Fig. 3.8 (right)). It turns out that at $T=0.1$ the maximal absolute error is on the order of $7 \cdot 10^{-2}$. The maximal mismatch (known also as Gibb's phenomenon) occurs at the vertexes $x= \pm 1$, which can be reduced by considering larger values for $N$.


Figure 3.8: Absolute difference between the implemented and required terminal states (left) and the corresponding control regime (3.27)

Apparently, the equivalence between the exact controllabilities established above does not occur in the case of approximate controllability. Nevertheless, the Minkowski inequality provides for the residue

## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

with the estimate

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u) \leq 2 d\left\|\frac{1}{\Theta(x, T)} \frac{\partial \Theta(x, T)}{\partial x}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}+\left\|w_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} .
$$

Further, since both $\Theta$ and $\frac{\partial \Theta}{\partial x}$ are uniformly bounded in $\mathbb{R} \times[0, T]$, then using the obvious inequality ${ }^{3}$

$$
\left\|g_{1} \cdot g_{2}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} \leq\left\|g_{1}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} \cdot\left\|g_{2}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})},
$$

as well as the solution (3.21) evaluated at $t=T$, the following estimate for the residue is obtained:

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u) \leq 2 d \mathcal{R}_{T 0}(u) \cdot \mathcal{R}_{T 1}(u)+\left\|w_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} .
$$

Here

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathcal{R}_{T 0}(u)=\left\|G_{i}(x, T)+\int_{0}^{T} G_{d}(x, T-\tau) u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}^{-1}, \\
G_{i}(x, T)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Theta_{0}(\xi) G(x-\xi, T) \mathrm{d} \xi, \\
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}(u)=\left\|\frac{\partial G_{i}(x, T)}{\partial x}+\int_{0}^{T} \frac{\partial G_{d}(x, T-\tau)}{\partial x} u(\tau) \mathrm{d} \tau\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Thus, as soon as

$$
2 d \mathcal{R}_{T 0}(u) \cdot \mathcal{R}_{T 1}(u)+\left\|w_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} \leq \varepsilon,
$$

then (3.20) holds, i.e., the Burgers' equation is approximately control-

[^28]lable. Therefore, when the inequality
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}:=\varepsilon-\left\|w_{T}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} \geq 0, \tag{3.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

holds ${ }^{4}$, any admissible control

$$
u \in \tilde{\mathcal{U}}_{\text {res }}=\left\{u \in \mathcal{U}, \mathcal{R}_{T 0}(u) \cdot \mathcal{R}_{T 1}(u) \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}}{2 d}\right\}
$$

is a resolving control, i.e., it ensures the approximate controllability of the Burgers' equation at the given $T$ with the required accuracy $\varepsilon$.

Furthermore, using the Minkowski inequality, it is obtained

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T 0}(u) \leq c_{0}+\int_{0}^{T} g_{0}(T-\tau)|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T 1}(u) \leq c_{1}+\int_{0}^{T} g_{1}(T-\tau)|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau
$$

where

$$
\begin{gathered}
c_{0}=\left\|G_{i}(x, T)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}, \quad c_{1}=\left\|\frac{\partial G_{i}(x, T)}{\partial x}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}, \\
g_{0}(t)=\left\|G_{d}(x, t)\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})}, \quad g_{1}(t)=\left\|\frac{\partial G_{d}(x, t)}{\partial x}\right\|_{L^{\infty}(\mathbb{R})} .
\end{gathered}
$$

Therefore, as soon as (3.29) holds, the inequality

$$
\int_{0}^{T}\left[g_{1}(T-\tau)-g_{0}(T-\tau)\right]|u(\tau)| \mathrm{d} \tau \leq \frac{\tilde{\varepsilon}_{T}}{2 d} c_{0}-c_{1}
$$

[^29]
## 3. NONLINEAR SYSTEMS

is also sufficient for the approximate controllability of the Burgers' equation.

For a more specific analysis, consider a flow governed by (3.16) in a thin infinite layer. Assume that the flow source is located at $x=-1$ section of the layer and generates a harmonic flux

$$
\varphi(t)=[\theta(t-0)-\theta(t-1)] \exp (i \pi t),
$$

which vanishes when $t>1$. Therefore, the Burgers' equation must be complemented by the initial condition

$$
w(x, 0) \equiv 0 \quad \text { in } \quad[-1,1]
$$

and boundary condition

$$
w(-1, t)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\varphi(t), t \in[0,1] \\
0, \text { else }
\end{array}\right.
$$

Let in particular

$$
v(x)=\operatorname{rect}(2 x)
$$

The problem is to find such an admissible control $u \in \mathcal{U}$, that ensures the approximate null-controllability of the flow, i.e.,

$$
\mathcal{R}_{T}(u)=\|w(x, T)\|_{L^{\infty}[-1,1]} \leq \varepsilon
$$

with $\varepsilon=10^{-4}$. Obviously, the desired $T$ must satisfy $T<T_{0}$, where $T_{0}$ satisfies

$$
\left\|w\left(x, T_{0}\right)\right\|_{L^{\infty}[-1,1]} \leq \varepsilon
$$

when $u \equiv 0$. Restricting the consideration by $d=1$, it is obtained that
$T_{0}=10.35$ (see Fig. 3.9).
Involving the distributed control regime (2.37), it is possible to achieve the approximate null-controllability of the flow for $T=9.2$ when $u^{o}=-1, \omega=2 \pi$ and $\gamma=0$ (see Fig. 3.10). Furthermore, it is evident from Fig. 3.11 that when $u^{o}=1, \omega=\pi$ and $\gamma=-\frac{\pi}{2}$, the flow is approximately null-controllable at $T=7.15$.

On the other hand, the same accuracy can be achieved by using a single impulsive action

$$
u(t)=u^{o} \delta\left(t-t^{o}\right),
$$

where $0<t^{o}<T_{0}$. Indeed, Fig. 3.12 shows that when $u^{o}=1$ and $t^{o}=1$, the flow is approximately null-controllable at $T=8.5$.

Furthermore, involving the switching regime (2.43), it is possible to achieve the approximate null-controllability of the flow for smaller values of $T$. Choosing $u_{1}=-u_{2}=0.1, t_{1}=0$ and $t_{2}=1.2$, the approximate null-controllability is achieved for $T=6$ (see Fig. 3.13).


Figure 3.9: Uncontrolled flow in the layer at $t=10.35$


Figure 3.10: Flow in the layer at $t=9.2$ (left) and corresponding time-harmonic control regime (right)


Figure 3.11: Flow in the layer at $t=7.15$ (left) and corresponding time-harmonic control regime (right)


Figure 3.12: Flow in the layer at $t=8.5$ (left) and corresponding impulsive control regime (right)


Figure 3.13: Flow in the layer at $t=8.5$ (left) and corresponding impulsive control regime (right)

## Summary

Along with stability and reliability, controllability, i.e., the ability to produce controls providing a desired terminal state within a specified time, is one of the most crucial features of control systems. In order to ensure proper functionality, control systems are verified to possess the mentioned properties (and perhaps some additional ones as well). The usual analysis of controllability consists of evaluation of the residue between the desired state and the state implemented by a specific choice of an admissible control at the required instant. Depending on the value of the residue obtained on the set of admissible controls, the controllability is classified as exact or approximate. Thus, if the residue is exactly zero, the system is referred to as exactly controllable. If this does not hold, but the the residue remains smaller than a required precision, then the system is called approximately controllable.

There exist several approaches for verifying particular systems on exact or approximate controllability. One of the approaches is based on the minimization of the residue on the set of admissible controls. By solving the minimization problem, it is possible not only to figure out whether the system is exactly controllable or not, but to estimate to what extent the system is approximately controllable. Moreover, the
approach allows the determination of the set of resolving controls explicitly, which is also a valuable advantage. However, the minimization procedure can be of a high computational cost, e.g., in higher dimensions, for systems with complicated state constraints, for a large set of admissible controls, in the case of discontinuous state transitions, etc. Another approach consists in a heuristic representation of resolving controls which contain a set of free parameters. Those parameters are eventually determined by substituting the controls into the residue and solving the resulting nonlinear algebraic equations. Compared with the previous approach, this one operates with explicitly defined controls, instead of searching through the set of admissible controls. Therefore, it incurs a smaller computational cost.

The controllability analysis can be simplified if the explicit solution of the state constraints is somehow found, since in that case the dependence of the residue on the control function is explicit. Taking into account that the notion of the Green's function is extended from linear to nonlinear systems, the Green's representation formula can serve that purpose. Indeed, evaluating the state function represented by means of the Green's formula at the required instant and substituting into the residue, either of the aforementioned approaches can be applied to study the controllability and to define the set of resolving controls explicitly. The advantage of the Green's function method in exact controllability analysis is conditioned by the availability of extensive handbooks containing explicit Green's functions for numerous known equations and their coupled systems. In approximate controllability analysis the Green's function method is more advantageous due to the existence of the upper and lower bounds for the Green's function of some "irregular" systems, for which the explicit derivation of
the Green's function is complicated.
Case studies show that the developed approach works well for linear systems with complicated state constraints, such as partial differential equations with variable coefficients, equations defined in unbounded domains, equations containing uncertainties, higher dimensional systems. At this, the approach is efficient both in exact and approximate controllability analysis. By means of expansion into series of orthogonal functions, the exact controllability analysis is reduced to an infinitedimensional system of nonlinear equality type constraints on the control function. Verifying that the expansion coefficients decrease sufficiently fast, the infinite-dimensional system is usually truncated and studied as a finite-dimensional problem of moments. The algorithm for finding the $L^{p}$ optimal solution of the finite-dimensional nonlinear problem of moments is quite straightforward. Therefore, optimal control problems can be studied as well. On the other hand, in some cases, the heuristic determination of controls can also be quite convenient. The approximate controllability is studied by using some inequalities to estimate the residue from above. Eventually, nonlinear inequality type constraints are derived for the control function. However, those constraints are merely sufficient for the approximate controllability, which means that even if those constraints are not satisfied by any choice of admissible controls, the approximate controllability may still be achieved. Also, in this case, the heuristic determination of resolving controls is quite convenient for a basic analysis.

The developed approach is also efficiently applicable for analyzing approximate controllability of some nonlinear systems. It is established that second order nonlinear ordinary differential equations of a specific form can be approximated by a type of the Green's representation for-
mula with a Green's function satisfying the appropriate nonlinear equation. Moreover, these equations are reduced from second order partial differential equations which are linear in the second order time derivative, for instance, by the method of generalized separation of variables. The approach provides an easily verifiable criterion for the approximate controllability. Note also that the approach is useful in the case of exactly linearizable nonlinear differential equations, since the solution of the linearized equation can be represented by the Green's representation formula. Furthermore, it is shown that the residue between the desired and implemented states is the same for the nonlinear and linearized equations. As such, their controllability analysis is equivalent.

## Bibliography

[1] Kalman R. E., Ho Y. C., Narendra K. S. (1963), Controllability of linear dynamical systems // Contributions to Differential Equations, vol. 1, issue 2, pp. 189-213.
[2] Fattorini H. O., Russell D. L. (1971), Exact controllability theorems for linear parabolic equations in one space dimension // Archive for Rational Mechanics and Analysis, vol. 43, issue 4, pp. 272-292.
[3] Russell D. L. (1978), Controllability and stabilizability theory for linear partial differential equations. Recent progress and open questions // SIAM Reviews, vol. 20, issue 4, pp. 639-739.
[4] Lions J.-L. (1988), Exact controllability, stabilization and perturbations for distributed systems // SIAM Reviews, vol. 30, pp. 1-68.
[5] Nonlinear Controllability and Optimal Control (1990), Edited by Sussmann H. J. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Pure and Applied Mathematics, Boca Raton.
[6] Klamka J. (1991), Controllability of Dynamical Systems. Kluwer Academic, Dordrecht.
[7] Krabs W. (1992), On Moment Theory and Controllability of OneDimensional Vibrating Systems and Heating Processes. Springer, Berlin.
[8] Nikitin S. (1994), Global Controllability and Stabilization. World Scientific Publishing Co., Singapore.
[9] Komornik V. (1994), Exact Controllability and Stabilization. The Multiplier Method. Research in Applied Mathematics. John Wiley \& Sons, Chichester, Masson, Paris.
[10] Avdonin S. A., Ivanov S. A. (1995), Families of Exponentials. The Method of Moments in Controllability Problems for Distributed Parameter Systems. Cambridge University Press, New York.
[11] Fursikov A., Imanuvilov O. Yu. (1996), Controllability of Evolution Equations. Lecture Notes Series, vol. 34. Seoul National University, Research Institute of Mathematics, Global Analysis Research Center, Seoul.
[12] Lions J.-L. (1998), Exact controllability and perturbations for distributed systems // SIAM Reviews,vol. 30, issue 1, pp. 1-68.
[13] Krabs W., Sklyar G. M. (2002), On Controllability of Linear Vibrations. Nova Science Publishers, New York.
[14] Krabs W., Pickl S. W. (2003), Analysis, Controllability and Optimization of Time-Discrete Systems and Dynamical Games. Springer, Berlin.
[15] Kujundzic S. M. (2004), Methods and Models for Stability, Controllability and Reliability Analysis of Systems Motion. Fizmatlit, Moscow.
[16] Agrachev A. A., Sachkov Yu. L. (2004), Control Theory from Geometric Viewpoint. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
[17] Hangos K. M., Bokor J., Szederkenyi G. (2004), Analysis and Control of Nonlinear Process Systems. Springer, London.
[18] Zuazua E. (2006), Controllability and Observability of Partial Differential Equations: Some Results and Open Problems. Handbook of Differential Equations: Evolutionary Differential Equations, vol. 3, Elsevier/North-Holland, Amsterdam.
[19] Coron J.-M. (2007), Control and Nonlinearity. American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI.
[20] Glowinski R., Lions J.-L., He J. (2008), Exact and Approximate Controllability for Distributed Parameter Systems: A Numerical Approach. Cambridge University Press, New York.
[21] Shirikyan A. (2008), Navier-Stokes and Euler Equations: Cauchy Problem and Controllability. PhD course delivered at SISSA, Trieste, https://shirikyan.u-cergy.fr/sissa2008.pdf.
[22] Levine J. (2009), Analysis and Control of Nonlinear Systems: A Flatness-Based Approach. Springer, Berlin.
[23] Glizer V. Y., Turetsky V. (2011), Robust Controllability of Linear Systems. Mathematics Research Developments. Nova Science Publishers, New York.
[24] Lasiecka I., Triggiani R. (2011), Control Theory for Partial Differential Equations: Volume 2, Abstract Hyperbolic-like Systems over a Finite Time Horizon. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
[25] Nabi-Abdolyousefi M. (2014), Controllability, Identification, and Randomness in Distributed Systems. Springer Theses. Springer, Heidelberg.
[26] Gugat M. (2015), Exact Controllability. In "Optimal Boundary Control and Boundary Stabilization of Hyperbolic Systems". SpringerBriefs in Electrical and Computer Engineering. Birkhäuser, Cham.
[27] Fragnelli G., Mugnai D. (2016), Carleman Estimates, Observability Inequalities and Null Controllability for Interior Degenerate Nonsmooth Parabolic Equations. Memoirs of the American Mathematical Society. American Mathematical Society, Providence, Rhode Island.
[28] Khapalov A. Y. (2017), Mobile Point Sensors and Actuators in the Controllability Theory of Partial Differential Equations. Springer, Cham, Switzerland.
[29] Triggiani R. (1991), Lack of exact controllability for wave and plate equations with finitely many boundary controls // Differential Integral Equations, vol. 4, issue 4, pp. 683-705.
[30] Belishev M. I., Glasman A. K. (2000), Boundary control of the Maxwell dynamical system: lack of controllability by topological reasons // ESAIM Control, Optimization and Calculus of Variations, vol. 5, pp. 207-217.
[31] Micu S., Zuazua E. (2001), On the lack of null-controllability of the heat equation on the half-line // Transactions of the American Mathematical Society, vol. 353, issue 4, pp. 1635-1659.
[32] Micu S., Zuazua E. (2001), On the lack of null controllability of the heat equation on the half-space // Portugaliae Mathematica. Nova Série, vol. 58, issue 1, pp. 1-24.
[33] Micu S., Zuazua E. (2004), Null Controllability of the Heat Equation in Unbounded Domains. In "Unsolved Problems in Mathematical Systems and Control Theory", edited by Blondel V. D., Megretski A., Princeton University Press, Princeton.
[34] Shirikyan A. (2008), Euler equations are not exactly controllable by a finite-dimensional external force / / Physica D: Nonlinear Phenomena, vol. 237, issue 10, pp. 1317-1323.
[35] Petersen I. R. (2009), A notion of possible controllability for uncertain linear systems with structured uncertainty // Automatica, vol. 45, issue 1, pp. 134-141.
[36] Halanay A. Pandolfi L. (2012), Lack of controllability of the heat equation with memory // Systems \& Control Letters, vol. 61, issue 10, pp. 999-1002.
[37] Guerrero S., Imanuvilov O. Yu. (2013), Remarks on non controllability of the heat equation with memory // ESAIM Control, Optimization and Calculus Variations, vol. 19, issue 1, pp. 288-300.
[38] Halanay A., Pandolfi L. (2013), Lack of controllability of thermal systems with memory // Evolution Equations and Control Theory, vol. 3, issue 3, pp. 485-497.
[39] Halanay A., Pandolfi L. (2014), Approximate controllability and lack of controllability to zero of the heat equation with memory // Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications, vol. 425, issue 1, pp. 194-211.
[40] Romanov I., Shamaev A. (2016), Noncontrollability to rest of the two-dimensional distributed system governed by the integrodifferential equation // Journal of Optimization Theory and Applications, vol. 170, issue 3, pp. 772-782.
[41] Pandolfi L. (2017), Controllability and lack of controllability with smooth controls in viscoelasticity via moment methods // arXiv:1709.04414v1
[42] Cerpa E., Crépeau E. (2017), On the controllability of the improved Boussinesq equation // Reprint, <hal-01661174>
[43] Utkin V. I. (1992), Sliding Modes in Control and Optimization. Communications and Control Engineering, Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[44] Hovakimyan N., Cao C. (2010), L ${ }^{1}$ Adaptive Control Theory: Guaranteed Robustness with Fast Adaptation. Advances in Design and Control. SIAM, Philadelphia.
[45] Hamidreza N., Sun D., Lee H., Hovakimyan N. (2017), Optimized $L^{1}$ adaptive controller for trajectory tracking of an indoor quadrotor // AIAA Journal of Guidance, Control and Dynamics, vol. 40, issue 6, pp. 1415-1427.
[46] Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2017), Controllability of semi-infinite rod heating by a point source // Journal of Physics. Conference Series, in press.
[47] Lions J.-L. (1991), Remarks on Approximate Controllability for Parabolic Systems. In "The Finite Element Method in the 1990's", edited by Oñate E., Periaux J., Samuelsson A., Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[48] Lions J.-L. (2000), Fictitious Domains and Approximate Controllability. In "System Theory", edited by Djaferis T. E. and Schick I. C., The Springer International Series in Engineering and Computer Science, vol. 518. Springer, Boston, MA.
[49] Micu S., Zuazua E. (2006), An Introduction to the Controllability of Partial Differential Equations. Lecture Notes. http://www.bcamath.org/documentos_public/archivos/ publicaciones/argel.pdf
[50] Shirikyan A. (2010), Control Theory for the Burgers Equation: Agrachev-Sarychev Approach. PhD course delivered at University of Iaşi, https://shirikyan.u-cergy.fr/iasi2010.pdf.
[51] Tatsien Li (2010), Controllability and Observability for Quasilinear Hyperbolic Systems. American Institute of Mathematical Sciences, Springfield.
[52] Krabs W. (2010), Dynamical Systems: Stability, Controllability and Chaotic Behavior. Springer, Heidelberg.
[53] Cheng D., Hu X., Shen T. (2010), Analysis and Design of Nonlinear Control Systems. Springer, Science Press, Berlin, Beijing.
[54] Khapalov A. Y. (2010), Controllability of Partial Differential Equations Governed by Multiplicative Controls. Springer, Berlin.
[55] Shirikyan A. (2014), Approximate Controllability of the Viscous Burgers Equation on the Real Line. In "Geometric Control Theory and Sub-Riemannian Geometry" edited by Stefani G., Boscain U., Gauthier JP., Sarychev A., Sigalotti M,. Springer INdAM Series, vol. 5, Springer, Cham.
[56] Zhou H. X. (1983), Approximate controllability for a class of semilinear abstract equations // SIAM Journal of Control and Optimization, vol. 21, pp. 551-565.
[57] Klamka J. (1992), Approximate controllability of second order dynamical systems // Applied Mathematics and Computer Sciences, vol. 2, pp. 135-148.
[58] Raju G. K. (1995), Approximate controllability of nonautonomous semilinear systems // Nonlinear Analysis. Theory, Methods \& Applications, vol. 24, issue 9, pp. 1377-1393.
[59] Telega J. J., Bielski W. R. (2000), Controllability and stabilization in elasticity, heat conduction and thermoelasticity: review of recent developments // Journal of Global Optimization, vol. 17, issues 1-4, pp. 353-386.
[60] Shirikyan A. (2006), Approximate controllability of threedimensional Navier-Stokes equations // Communications in Mathematical Physics, vol. 266, issue 1, pp. 123-151.
[61] Nersisyan V. (2010), Global approximate controllability for Schrödinger equation in higher Sobolev norms and applications // Annales de l Institut Henri Poincaré (C) Non Linear Analysis, vol. 27, issue 3, pp. 901-915.
[62] Nersesyan V. (2015), Approximate controllability of Lagrangian trajectories of the 3D Navier-Stokes system by a finite-dimensional force // Nonlinearity, vol. 28, issue 3, pp. 825-848.
[63] Butkovskiy A. G. (1975), Control Methods for Systems with Distributed Parameters. Nauka, Moscow [in Russian].
[64] Vladimirov V. S. (2003), Methods of the Theory of Generalized Functions. Taylor \& Francis, London, New York.
[65] Teodorescu P. P., Kecs W. W., Toma A. (2003), Distribution Theory: With Applications in Engineering and Physics. WILEY-VCH Verlag, Weinheim.
[66] Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2014), On optimal boundary and distributed control of partial integro-differential equations // Archives of Control Sciences, vol. 24 (LX), issue 1, pp. 5-25.
[67] Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2015), Structural Optimization and Control of Vibrations of Deformable Systems with Variable Parameters. PhD dissertation. Institute of Mechanics, National Academy of Sciences of Armenia.
[68] Jilavyan S. H., Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2015), Topology optimization for elastic base under rectangular plate subjected to moving load // Archives of Control Sciences, vol. 25 (LXI), issue 3, pp. 289-305.
[69] Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2015), The Bubnov-Galerkin method in control problems for bilinear systems // Automation and Remote Control, vol. 76, issue 8, pp. 1361-1368.
[70] Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2015), Generalized control with compact support for systems with distributed parameters// Archives of Control Sciences, vol. 25 (LXI), issue 1, pp. 5-21.
[71] Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2016), Generalized control with compact support of wave equation with variable coefficients // International Journal of Dynamics and Control, vol. 4, issue 4, pp. 447-455.
[72] Nocedal J., Wright S. J. (2006), Numerical Optimization. $2^{\text {nd }}$ edition. Springer Series in Operations Research and Financial Engineering. Springer, New York.
[73] Ruszczyński A. (2006), Nonlinear Optimization. Princeton University Press, Princeton.
[74] Bartsekas D. I. (2016), Nonlinear Programming. Athena Scientific, Athens.
[75] Galaktionov V. A., Svirshchevskii S. R. (2006), Exact Solutions and Invariant Subspaces of Nonlinear Partial Differential Equations in Mechanics and Physics. Chapman \& Hall/CRC, Boca Raton.
[76] Polyanin A. D., Zaitsev V. (2012), Handbook of Nonlinear Partial Differential Equations. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[77] Polyanin A. D., Nazaikinskii V. E. (2016), Handbook of Linear Partial Differential Equations for Engineers and Scientists. 2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ edition. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[78] Polyanin A. D., Zaitsev V. F. (2017), Handbook of Ordinary Differential Equations: Exact Solutions, Methods, and Problems. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[79] Garroni M. G., Menaldi J. L. (1992), Green Functions for Second Order Parabolic Integrodifferential Problems. Longman Scientific, New York.
[80] Butkovskiy A. G., Pustil'nikov L. M. (1993), Characteristics of Distributed-Parameter Systems. Handbook of Equations of Mathematical Physics and Distributed Parameter Systems. Springer, Dordrecht.
[81] Melnikov Yu. A. (1995), Green's Functions in Applied Mechanics. Computational Mechanics Publications. WIT Press, Southampton.
[82] Polyanin A. D., Zaitsev V. F. (2003), Handbook of Exact Solutions for Ordinary Differential Equations. 2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ Edition, Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[83] Şeremet V. D. (2003), Handbook of Green's Functions and Matrices. WIT Press, Southampton.
[84] Qin Q. H. (2007), Green's Function and Boundary Elements in Multifield Materials. Elsevier, Oxford.
[85] Beck J. V., Cole K. D., Haji-Sheikh A., Litkouhi B. (2010), Heat Conduction Using Green's Functions. $2^{\text {nd }}$ edition. CRC PRess, Boca Raton.
[86] Kythe P. K. (2011), Green's Functions and Linear Differential Equations: Theory, Applications, and Computation. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[87] Stakgold I., Holst M. (2011), Green's Functions and Boundary Value Problems. A John Wiley \& Sons, Hoboken, New Jersey.
[88] Melnikov Yu. A. (2011), Green's Functions and Infinite Products. Bridging the Divide. Birkhäuser, Basel.
[89] Melnikov Yu. A., Melnikov M. Yu. (2012), Green's Functions: Construction and Applications. De Gruyter Studies in Mathematics, vol. 42. Walter de Gruyter GmbH, Berlin.
[90] Greenberg M. D. (2015), Applications of Green's Functions in Science and Engineering. Dover, New York.
[91] Duffy D. G. (2015), Green's Functions with Applications. $2^{\text {nd }}$ Edition, Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[92] Melnikov Yu. A., Borodin V. N. (2017), Green's Functions. Potential Fields on Surfaces. Developments in Mathematics, vol. 48. Springer, Berlin.
[93] Green G. (1828), An Essay on the Application of Mathematical Analysis to the Theories of Electricity and Magnetism. Nottingham.
[94] Avetisyan A. S., Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2016), Green's function approach in approximate controllability problems // Proceedings of NAS of Armenia. Mechanics, vol. 69, issue 2, pp. 3-22.
[95] Adomian G. (1986), Nonlinear Stochastic Operator Equations. Kluwer Academic Publishers, New York.
[96] Adomian G. (1994), Solving Frontier problems of Physics: The decomposition method. Kluwer Academic Publishers, New York.
[97] Hsu C. S. (1987), Cell-to-Cell Mapping. A Method of Global Analysis for Nonlinear Systems. Springer-Verlag, New York.
[98] Liao S. J. (2003), Beyond Perturbation: Introduction to the Homotopy Analysis Method. Chapman \& Hall/ CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[99] Liao S. J. (2012), Homotopy Analysis Method in Nonlinear Differential Equations. Springer, Higher Education Press, Berlin, Beijing.
[100] Olver P. J. (1993), Applications of Lie Groups to Differential Equations. Springer-Verlag, New York.
[101] Zaitsev V. F., Polyanin A. D. (1994), Discrete-Group Methods for Integrating Equations of Nonlinear Mechanics. CRC Press, Boca Raton, 1994.
[102] Ablowitz M., Clarkson P. (1991), Solitons, Nonlinear Evolution Equations and Inverse Scattering. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
[103] Polyanin A. D., Zhurov A. I., Vyazmin A. V. (2000), Generalized separation of variables in nonlinear heat and mass transfer equations // Journal of Non-Equilibrium Thermodynamics, vol. 25 , issues 3-4, pp. 251-267.
[104] Barannyk A. F., Barannyk T. A., Yuryk I. I. (2011), Generalized separation of variables and exact solutions of nonlinear equations // Ukrainian Mathematical Journal, vol. 62, issue 12, pp. 18521865.
[105] Kudryashov N. A. (2005), Simplest equation method to look for exact solutions of nonlinear differential equations // Chaos, Solitons \& Fractals, vol. 24, issue 5, pp. 1217-1231.
[106] Conte R. (2003), Exact Solutions of Nonlinear Partial Differential Equations by Singularity Analysis. In "Direct and Inverse Methods in Nonlinear Evolution Equations". Lecture Notes in Physics, vol 632, pp. 1-83. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[107] Billings S. A. (2013), Nonlinear System Identification: NARMAX Methods in the Time, Frequency, and Spatio-Temporal Domains. John Wiley \& Sons, Chichester.
[108] Integrability of Nonlinear Systems (2004), Edited by KosmannSchwarzbach Y., Grammaticos B., Tamizhmani K. M. Lecture Notes in Physics, vol. 638. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[109] Torokhti A., Howlett Ph. (2007), Computational Methods for Modeling of Nonlinear Systems. Mathematics in Science and Engineering, vol. 212. Elsevier Science, Amsterdam.
[110] Polyanin A. D., Zaitsev V. F., Zhurov A. I. (2005), Solution Methods for Nonlinear Equations of Mathematical Physics and Mechanics. Fizmatlit, Moscow [in Russian].
[111] Kudryashov N. A. (2009), Seven common errors in finding exact solutions of nonlinear differential equations // Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation, vol. 14, issues 9-10, pp. 3507-3529.
[112] Kheifets S. (1984), Application of the Green's function method to some nonlinear problems of an electron storage ring. Part I. The Green's function for the Fokker-Planck equation // Particle Accelerators, vol. 15, pp. 67-82.
[113] Flesch R. J., Trullinger S. E. (1987), Green's functions for nonlinear Klein-Gordon kink perturbation theory // Journal of Mathematical Physics, vol. 28, issue 7, pp. 1619-1631.
[114] Rey O. (1990), The role of the Green's function in a non-linear elliptic equation involving the critical Sobolev exponent // Journal of Functional Analysis, vol. 89, issue 1, pp. 1-52.
[115] McCall K. R. (1994), Theoretical study of nonlinear elastic wave propagation // Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth, vol. 99, issue B2, pp. 2591-2600.
[116] Dymnikov V. P. (2000), The Green function method in nonlinear problems of physics of atmosphere // Russian Journal of Numerical Analysis \& Mathematical Modelling, vol. 15, issues 3-4, pp. 237246.
[117] Lui F.-M., Cai H., Huang N.-N. (2004), Green's function method for perturbed sine-Gordon equation // Communications in Theoretical Physics, vol. 41, issue 6, pp. 907-910.
[118] Wang W. (2010), Nonlinear evolution systems and Green's function // Acta Mathematica Scientia, vol. 30B, issue 6, pp. 20512063.
[119] Longuet-Higgins M. S., Cokelet E. D. (1976), The deformation of steep surface waves on water. I. A numerical method of computation // Proceedings of Royal Society of London. A, vol. 350, issue 1660, pp. 1-26.
[120] Nerantzaki M. S., Katsikadelis J. T. (1988), A Green's function method for large deflection analysis of plates // Acta Meccanica, vol. 75 , issues 1-4, pp. 211-225.
[121] Boglaev I. P., Miller J. J. H. (1988), Petrov-Galerkin and Green's function methods for non-linear boundary value problems with applications to semiconductor devices // Proceedings of the Royal Irish Academy, vol. 88A, issue 2, pp. 153-168.
[122] de Haas P. C. A., Zandbergen P. J. (1996), The application of domain decomposition to time-domain computations of nonlinear water waves // Journal of Computational Physics, vol. 129, issue 2, pp. 332-344.
[123] Koval'chuk B. V., Lopushanskaya G. P. (1993), The Green's function method in stationary and nonstationary nonlinear heatconduction problems // Journal of Mathematical Sciences, vol. 66, issue 6, pp. 2587-2591.
[124] Taigbenu A. E., Onyejekwe O. O. (1999), Green's function-based integral approaches to nonlinear transient boundary-value problems (II) // Applied Mathematical Modelling, vol. 23, issue 3, pp. 241-253.
[125] Onyejekwe O. (1996), A Green element description of mass transfer in reacting systems // Numerical Heat Transfer. Part B, vol. 30, issue B30, pp. 483-498.
[126] Onyejekwe O. (2002), Green element solutions of nonlinear diffu-sion-reaction model // Computers \& Chemical Engineering, vol. 26 , issue 3, pp. 423-427.
[127] Jones M. R., Solovjov V. P. (2010), Green's function approach to nonlinear conduction and surface radiation problems // Journal of Heat Transfer, vol. 132, issue 2, 024502.
[128] Valdes-Parada F. J., Sales-Cruz M., Ochoa-Tapia J. A., AlvarezRamirez J. (2008), On Green's function methods to solve nonlinear reaction-diffusion systems // Computers \& Chemical Engineering, vol. 32, issue 3, pp. 503-511.
[129] Alvarez-Ramirez J., Valdes-Parada F.J., Alvarez J., Ochoa-Tapia J.A. (2009), A Green's function formulation for finite-differences schemes // Chemical Engineering Sciences, vol. 62, issue 12, pp. 3083-3091.
[130] Hernandez-Martinez E., Valdes-Parada F.J., Alvarez-Ramirez J. (2011), A Green's function formulation of nonlocal finite-difference schemes for reaction-diffusion equations // Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics, vol. 235, issue 9, pp. 3096-3103.
[131] Hernandez-Martinez H., Valdes-Paradab F., Alvarez-Ramirez J., Pueblac H., Morales-Zarate E. (2016), A Green's function approach for the numerical solution of a class of fractional reac-tion-diffusion equations // Mathematics and Computers in Simulation, vol. 121, pp. 133-145.
[132] Epperson J. F. (1989), On the use of Green's functions for approximating nonlinear parabolic PDE's // Applied Mathematics Letters, vol. 2, issue 3, pp. 293-296.
[133] Silant'ev N. A. (1992), Nonlinear equations for Green's functions and calculation of turbulent diffusion coefficients // Soviet Physics JETP, vol. 74, issue 4, pp. 650-659.
[134] Tvorogov S. D. (1998), Green's functions for certain cases in nonlinear electrodynamics // Russian Physics Journal, vol. 41, issue 2, pp. 147-151.
[135] Ford W. F., Pennline J. A., Xu Y., Zhao Y. (2000), Asymptotic error analysis of a quadrature method for integral equations with Green's function kernels // Journal of Integral Equations and Applications, vol. 12, issue 4, pp. 349-384.
[136] Lobo A. E., Tsoy E. N., de Sterke C. M. (2001), Green function method for nonlinear elastic waves in layered media // Journal of Applied Physics, vol. 90, issue 8, pp. 3762-3770.
[137] Trifonov A. Yu., Trifonova L. B. (2002), The Fokker-PlanckKolmogorov equation with nonlocal nonlinearity in the semiclassical approximation // Russian Physics Journal, vol. 45, issue 2, pp. 118-128.
[138] Qiao B., Ruda H. E. (2004), Green functions for nonlinear operators and application to quantum computing // Physica A, vol. 334, issues 3-4, pp. 459-476
[139] Jerome J. W., Linnér A. (2007), Efficient approximation of implicitly defined functions: General theorems and classical benchmark studies // Journal of Approximation Theory, vol. 145, issue 1, pp. 81-99.
[140] Cuevas J., James G., Kevrekidis P. G., Malomed B. A., SanchezRey B. (2008), Approximation of solitons in the discrete NLS equation // Journal of Non-linear Mathematical Physics, vol. 15, issue 3, pp. 124-136.
[141] Brener E. A., Marchenko V. I. (2009), Nonlinear Green's functions in smectics // JETP Letters, vol. 90, issue 2, pp. 143-145.
[142] Deymier P. A., Runge K., Deymier M. J., Hoying J. B., Vasseur J. O. (2010), Calcium wave propagation in chains of endothelial cells with nonlinear reaction dynamics: Green's function approach // Physical Review E, vol. 82, 041913.
[143] Zheng Sh., Feng Zh. (2012), Green functions for a class of nonlinear degenerate operators with X-ellipticity // Transactions of American Mathematical Society, vol. 364, issue 7, pp. 3627-3655.
[144] Kulkarni R. P., Rane A. S. (2012), Asymptotic expansions for approximate solutions of Fredholm integral equations with Green's function type kernels // Journal of Integral Equations and Applications, vol. 24, issue 1, pp. 39-79.
[145] Ding Y., Wei Zh., Zhao Q. (2015), Solutions for a nonlinear fractional boundary value problem with sign-changing Green's function // International Journal of Nonlinear Sciences and Applications, vol. 8, issue 5, pp. 650-659.
[146] Khuri S. A., Sayfy A., Zaveri A. (2017), A new iteration method based on Green's functions for the solution of PDEs // International Journal of Applied and Computational Mathematics, vol. 3, issue 4, pp. 3091-3103.
[147] Cacuci D. G., Perez R. B., Protopopescu V. (1988), Duals and propagators: A canonical formalism for nonlinear equations // Journal of Mathematical Physics, vol. 29, issue 2, pp. 353-361.
[148] Cacuci D. G., Perez R. B., Protopopescu V. (1988), Extending Green's Function Formalism to General Nonlinear Equations. In Proceedings of the IVth Workshop on Nonlinear Evolution Equa-
tions and Dynamical Systems, edited by Léon J.J.P., World Scientific, Singapore, pp. 87-95.
[149] Cacuci D. G., Protopopescu V. (1989), Propagators for non-linear systems // Journal of Physics. A. Mathematical and Theoretical, vol. 22, issue 13, pp. 2399-2414.
[150] Cacuci D. G., Karakashian O. (1990), Benchmarking the propagator method for nonlinear systems: A Burgers-Korteweg-de Vries equation // Journal of Computational Physics, vol. 89, issue 1, pp. 63-79.
[151] Cacuci D. G., Protopopescu V. (1991), Canonical Propagators for Nonlinear Systems: Theory and Sample Applications. In "Mathematical Aspects of Fluid and Plasma Dynamics" ed. by Toscani G., Boffi V., Rionero S., Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, pp. 43-56.
[152] Frasca M. (2007), Green functions and nonlinear systems // Modern Physics Letters. A, vol. 22, issue 18, pp. 1293-1299.
[153] Frasca M. (2008), Green functions and nonlinear systems: Short time expansion // International Journal of Modern Physics. A, vol. 23, issue 2, pp. 299-308.
[154] Drumheller D. S. (1998), Introduction to Wave Propagation in Nonlinear Fluids and Solids. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
[155] Kudryashov N. A. (1991), On types of nonlinear non-integrable equations with exact solutions // Physics Letters A, vol. 155, issue 4-5, pp. 269-275.
[156] Kudryashov N. A. (2010), Meromorphic solutions of nonlinear ordinary differential equations // Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation, vol. 15, issue 7, 2778-2790.
[157] Kudryashov N. A. (2012), One method for finding exact solutions of nonlinear differential equations / Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation, vol. 17, issue 6, pp. 2248-2253.
[158] Bartlett J., Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2018), Extending the algebraic manipulability of differentials // arXiv:1801.09553v1
[159] Sakawa Y. (1972), A matrix Green's formula and optimal control of linear distributed-parameter systems // Journal of Optimization Theory and Applications, vol. 10, issue 5, pp. 290-299.
[160] Ball D. J., Hewit J. R. (1974), The optimal control of the temperature profile within a heat conduction system // Journal of Mechanical Engineering Science, vol. 16, issue 2, pp. 79-84.
[161] Pukal'skii I. D., Matiichuk M. I. (1986), Applications of the Green function of parabolic boundary-value problems to optimal control problems // Ukrainian Mathematical Journal, vol. 37, issue 6, pp. 605-610.
[162] Avellaneda M. (1989), Remarks on the Homogenization and Boundary Control of Distributed Systems. In "Control of Distributed Parameter Systems 1989", edited by Amouroux M., El Jai A. IFAC Symposia Series, Elsevier, New York.
[163] Dehui P. (1992), The model identification and optimal control of distributed parameter systems in economic management // IFAC Proceedings Volumes, vol. 25, issue 16, pp. 57-61.
[164] Lurie K. A. (1993), Applied Optimal Control Theory of Distributed Systems. Springer, New York.
[165] Momose K., Kimoto H. (1995), Green's function approach to optimal control of unsteady heat conduction field // Transactions of the Japan Society of Mechanical Engineers Series B, vol. 61, issue 587, pp. 2626-2631 [in Japanese].
[166] Goebel M. (1998), Smooth and Nonsmooth Optimal Lipschitz Control - A Model Problem. In "Variational Calculus, Optimal Control and Applications", edited by Bittner L., Bulirsch R., Heier K., Schmidt W. Birkhäuser, Basel. International Series of Numerical Mathematics, vol. 124, pp. 53-60.
[167] Kovaleva A. (1999), Optimal Control of Mechanical Oscillations. Foundations of Engineering Mechanics. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[168] Pukal'skii I. D. (2000), Green function of a parabolic boundaryvalue problem and the optimization problem // Ukrainian Mathematical Journal, vol. 52, issue 4, pp 649-654.
[169] Walther S., Airiau C., Bottaro A. (2001), Optimal control of Tollmien-Schlichting waves in a developing boundary layer // Physics of Fluids, vol. 13, issue 7, pp. 2087-2096.
[170] Liu W.-J., Krstić M. (2001), Stability enhancement by boundary control in the Kuramoto-Sivashinsky equation // Nonlinear Analysis, vol. 43, issue 4, pp. 485-507.
[171] Schulz M. (2006), Control Theory in Physics and other Fields of Science: Concepts, Tools, and Applications. Springer, Berlin.
[172] Nicaise S., Sirch D. (2011), Optimal control of the Stokes equations: conforming and non-conforming finite element methods under reduced regularity // Computational Optimization and Applications, vol. 49, issue 3, pp. 567-600.
[173] Xuan L.-J., Mao F., Wu J. Zh. (2012), Water hammer prediction and control: the Green's function method // Acta Mechanica Sinica, vol. 28, issue 2, pp. 266-273.
[174] Castaing C., Godet-Thobie C., Truong L.X., Satco B. (2014), Optimal Control Problems Governed by a Second Order Ordinary Differential Equation with m-Point Boundary Condition. In "Advances in Mathematical Economics" edited by Kusuoka S., Maruyama T., vol. 18, pp. 1-59. Advances in Mathematical Economics. Springer, Tokyo.
[175] Inman D. J. (2017), Vibration with Control. $2^{\text {nd }}$ edition. John Wiley \& Sons, Hoboken.
[176] Avetisyan A. S., Khurshudyan As. Zh. (2017), Green's function approach in approximate controllability for nonlinear physical processes // Modern Physics Letters A, vol. 32, issue 21, 1730015, 7 pages.
[177] Bandle C. (1978), Estimates for the Green's functions of elliptic operators // SIAM Journal on Mathematical Analysis, vol. 9, issue 6, pp. 1126-1136.
[178] van den Berg M. (1981), Bounds on Green's functions of secondorder differential equations // Journal of Mathematical Physics, vol. 22, issue 11, pp. 2452-2455.
[179] Dolzmann G., Müller S. (1995), Estimates for Green's matrices of elliptic systems by $L^{p}$ theory // Manuscripta Mathematica, vol. 88, issue 1, pp. 261-273.
[180] Riahi L. (2001), Green function bounds and parabolic potentials on a half-space // Potential Analysis, vol. 15, issue 1-2, pp. 133150.
[181] de Hoop M. V., Solna K. (2009), Estimating a Green's function from "field-field" correlations in a random medium // SIAM Journal on Applied Mathematics, vol. 69, issue 4, pp. 909-932.
[182] Yarahmadian Sh., Zumbrun K. (2009), Pointwise Green function bounds and long-time stability of large-amplitude noncharacteristic boundary layers // SIAM Journal on Mathematical Analysis, vol. 40, issue 6, pp. 2328-2350.
[183] Mayboroda S., Maz'ya V. (2009), Pointwise Estimates for the Polyharmonic Green Function in General Domains. In "Analysis, Partial Differential Equations and Applications" edited by Cialdea A., Ricci P. E., Lanzara F., Birkhäuser, Basel.
[184] Kang K., Kim S. (2010), Global pointwise estimates for Green's matrix of second order elliptic systems // Journal of Differential Equations, vol. 249, issue 11, pp. 2643-2662.
[185] Gil' M. I. (2011), Positivity conditions and bounds for Green's functions for higher order two-point BVP // Central European Journal of Mathematics, vol. 9, issue 5, pp. 1156-1163.
[186] Marahrens D., Otto F. (2015), Annealed estimates on the Green function // Probability Theory and Related Fields, vol. 163, issues 3-4, pp. 527-573.
[187] Gloria A., Marahrens D. (2016), Annealed estimates on the Green functions and uncertainty quantification // Annales de l'Institut Henri Poincaré (C), Non Linear Analysis, vol. 33, issue 5, pp. 1153-1197.
[188] Giunti A. (2017), Green's Function Estimates for Elliptic and Parabolic Operators. PhD dissertation. University of Leipzig.
[189] Polyanin A. D., Manzhirov A. V. (2008), Handbook of Integral Equations. 2 ${ }^{\text {nd }}$ edition. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton, London.
[190] Delves L. M., Mohamed J. L. (1985), Computational Methods for Integral Equations. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.
[191] Wazwaz A. M. (2011), Linear and Nonlinear Integral Equations: Methods and Applications. Springer, New York.
[192] Kubyshkin V. A. (1984), On solutions of a finite dimensional nonlinear problem of moments for control // Automation and Remote Control, vol. 45, issue 3, pp. 298-308.
[193] Linge S., Langtangen H. P. (2016), Solving Nonlinear Algebraic Equations. In "Programming for Computations - MATLAB/Octave. Texts in Computational Science and Engineering". Vol. 14. Springer, Cham.
[194] White R. E. (2016), Computational Mathematics: Models, Methods, and Analysis with MATLAB and MPI. $2^{\text {nd }}$ edition. Chapman \& Hall/CRC Press, Boca Raton.
[195] Luenberger D. G., Ye Y. (2009), Linear and Nonlinear Programming. $3^{\text {rd }}$ edition. Springer, New York.
[196] Ferguson T., Optimal Stopping and Applications. Mathematics Department UCLA. http://www.math.ucla.edu/~tom/ Stopping/Contents.html
[197] Lian J., Żak S.H. (2009), Control of Uncertain Systems. In "Springer Handbook of Automation", edited by Nof S. Y., Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.
[198] Reddy J. N. (2005), An Introduction to the Finite Element Method. $3^{\text {rd }}$ edition. McGraw Hill Series in Mechanical Engineering. McGraw-Hill, New York.
[199] Sachdev P. L. (1978), A generalised Cole-Hopf transformation for nonlinear parabolic and hyperbolic equations // Zeitschrift für Angewandte Mathematik und Physik (ZAMP), vol. 29, issue 6, pp. 963-970.
[200] Hin-Chi L., Huei-Wen C. (1996), A list of hodograph transformations and exactly linearizable systems // International Journal of Non-Linear Mechanics, vol. 31, issue 2, pp. 117-127.
[201] Samokhin A. V. (1999), Symmetries of linear and linearizable systems of differential equations // Acta Applicandae Mathematica, vol. 56, issue 2-3, pp. 253-300.
[202] Euler N., Euler M. (2003), Linearisable third order ordinary differential equations and generalised Sundman transformations // Acta Applicandae Mathematica, vol. 76, issue 1, 89-115.
[203] Ibragimov N. H., Meleshko S. V. (2005), Linearization of thirdorder ordinary differential equations by point and contact transformations // Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications, vol. 308, issue 1, pp. 266-289.
[204] Hopf E. (1950), The partial differential equation $u_{t}+u u_{x}=\mu u_{x x}$ // Communications on Pure and Applied Mathematics, vol. 3, issue 3, pp. 201-230.
[205] Cole J. D. (1951), On a quasi-linear parabolic equation occurring in aerodynamics // Quarterly of Applied Mathematics, vol. 9, pp. 225-236.

## Index

$L^{1}$ space, xxvi, 3
$L_{\text {loc }}^{1}$ space, xxvii, 93
$L^{2}$ space, xxvii, $3,92,99,115$
$L^{\infty}$ space, xxvii, 3, 94, 146, 154

Admissible control, 2, 4-6, 8, 9, 55-57, 61, 65, 82, 89, 92, 94, 96, 106, 112, 116, 129, 130, 146, 153, 154, 159
Adomian polynomials, 31
Approximate controllability, 6, 10-12, 48-50, 54, 5658, 65, 73, 75, 79-82, 94, 95, 98, 112, 127, 129, 131, 134, 136, 139, 142, 146, 151153, 159-162

Approximate null-controllability,

85, 86, 89, 90, 96, 97, 107, 115, 117, 131, 153-155

Bending stiffness, 26, 99
Boundary control, xxvi, 9, 48, $52,53,57,58,61,73$, $74,78,82,83,86,92$, 98, 99, 102, 109, 112
Burgers' equation, 34, 144, 146, 148, 152-154

Cacuci's approach, 31, 32, 34
Cauchy-Schwartz inequality, 85, 101, 115
Compactly supported control, 9, 79
Constant control, 73, 89, 117, 134, 141
Controllability, 2, 6, 7, 10, 12,

48, 50, 51, 55, 98, 108, $142,159,160$
Controller, 2, 5, 7, 8, 68, 128

Dirac function, xxiv, 6, 16, 17, $20,21,32,92,138,139$
Distributed control, xxvi, 48, $52,53,58,60,63,92$, 93, 146, 150, 154

Eigenfunction, 84
Eigenvalue, 84
Euclidean norm, xxviii, 4
Euler-Bernoulli theory, 98, 108
Exact controllability, 2-6, 10$12,48,49,56,66,81$, 82, 94, 98, 112, 115, 129, 146-148, 151, 159-161
Exact null-controllability, 92
Fourier integral transform, 18, 23
Fourier series, 39, 41, 149
Frasca's approach, 35, 43, 127, 130
Fredholm integral equation of the first kind, 66, 68

Gauss error function, xxv, 39

Generalized Burgers-Kortewegde Vries equation, 34
Generalized separation of variables, $30,128,162$
Gibb's phenomenon, 151
Green's function, 49, 83, 95, $100,103,113,145,160$
Green's function for linear equations, 15, 17-21, $23,25,30,55$
Green's function for nonlinear equations, $31,35,36$, 39, 41, 43, 49, 127, 130, 133
Green's function method, 15, 30, 48, 160
Green's representation formula, $18,20,22,31,33,35$, $36,48,55,83,94,100$, 113, 127, 130, 144, 145, 160, 162
Gâteaux derivative, 33

Heat equation, 22, 82, 92, 111, 144, 145, 148
Heaviside function, xxiv, 20, 21, 137
Hopf-Cole transformation, 144, 145

Hölder inequality, 152

Impulsive control, 6, 70, 78, 155
Infinitesimal strains, 107
Jacobi amplitude function, 41
Jacobi snoidal function, 39
Korteweg-de Vries equation, 34
Kronecker symbol, xxiv, 67
Lack of controllability, 2, 5, 115
Lambert function, 42
Laplace integral transform, 18, $21,23,25$
Leibniz rule, 101

Minkowski inequality, 56, 64, 85, 95, 101, 105, 115, 151, 153
Multidimensional Dirac function, xxiv, 16, 17, 32, 33

Null-controllability, 4, 63, 84, 92, 115

Optimal stopping, 77, 90, 109
Orthogonality, 67, 114, 161
Orthogonality with weight, 84, 86, 88

Problem of moments, 68, 161
Quasi-polynomial control, 74, 90, 117

Reachability, 6, 78, 92
Reliability, 6, 159
Residue, xxviii, 3-5, 53, 55, 73, $82,83,85,90,112$, 154, 159, 160
Resolving control, 9, 10, 12, 48, $66,73,117,130,132$, 134, 153

Set of admissible controls, xxvi, 3, 5-7, 9, 50, 52, 54, 58, 66, 83, 92, 94, 99, 113, 128, 146, 154, 159, 160
Set of resolving controls, xxvi, $10,56,60,66,85,116$, 130, 153, 160
Short time expansion, 37, 44
Sliding modes, 5, 8, 76, 77
Stability, 6, 159
State constraints, 3, 7, 11, 12, 48, 160
Sturm-Liouville problem, 84
Switching control, 8, 69, 76, 90, 155

Time-harmonic control, 74, 154
Triangle inequality, 131
Trigonometric control, 75, 90, 97, 117

Weierstrass elliptic function, 38
Weighted $L^{2}$ space, xxvii, 82, 83, 85

Young's modulus, 98

The book was edited several times. Nevertheless, we anticipate that there is room for improvement and correction. We highly appreciate any correspondence, whether concerning minor typos or larger issues in the text.

## Correspondence to

Asatur Khurshudyan
Institute of Mechanics
24/2 Baghramyan ave., 0019 Yerevan, Armenia
email: khurshudyan@mechins.sci.am


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ The full list of features depends on a particular system or its purpose of use.

[^1]:    ${ }^{2}$ In particular, $\mathcal{U}$ can contain all bounded, continuous or even measurable functions. Moreover, in some exceptional cases, $\mathcal{U}$ can be complemented by switching regimes and sliding modes.

[^2]:    ${ }^{3}$ For example, if the mathematical model consists of differential equations, then those constraints are Cauchy and/or boundary conditions.

[^3]:    ${ }^{4}$ There exists a huge body of references devoted to linear analysis. In what follows only models described by differential equations are considered. Some very well known and commonly used methods for differential equations are listed in [77, 78]. See also the references therein.

[^4]:    ${ }^{5} \Omega$ can be bounded or unbounded.

[^5]:    ${ }^{6}$ If $\Omega$ is unbounded, instead of boundary conditions, growth conditions on $\boldsymbol{w}$ at infinity are usually prescribed.

[^6]:    ${ }^{7}$ For particular forms and applications of such transformations see [64,65] , and for their applications in control and optimization see [46,66-71,94]. See also Subsection 1.2.1 below.

[^7]:    ${ }^{8}$ See Subsection 1.2.1 below.

[^8]:    ${ }^{9}$ The aim of this section is to show how the boundary and initial data are included into the right-hand side of the governing equation and how then the Green's formula (1.18) works for particular linear state constraints. Thus, the full derivation procedure of the Green's function, which can be found elsewhere, is skipped.

[^9]:    ${ }^{10}$ In Cacuci's approach $\mathcal{D}$ may be a differential, integral, or even multiplicative operator, or a combination of them. Nevertheless, in order to remain in the scope of this book, assume that $\mathcal{D}$ is a nonlinear differential operator.
    ${ }^{11}$ In [149] the state space is $\mathbf{W}=L^{2}$.

[^10]:    ${ }^{12}$ The approach in principle can be extended to the case of non-homogeneous Cauchy conditions.

[^11]:    ${ }^{13}$ Specifically, it describes nonlinear vibrations of a pendulum, longitudinal wave propagation in physically or geometrically nonlinear elastic rods, nonlinear electromagnetic oscillations, etc., and also has applications in quantum field theory.

[^12]:    ${ }^{14} \mathrm{Be}$ it either a boundary, a distributed, or a mixed type control problem.

[^13]:    ${ }^{1}$ Unlike Section 1.1, here the dependence of $\boldsymbol{w}$ on $\boldsymbol{u}$ is made explicit through the state constraints, so that $\boldsymbol{u}$ does not occur in the argument of $\boldsymbol{w}$.
    ${ }^{2}$ In principle, the case of combined control can also be considered. Then, the resolving systems derived in Section 2.2, as well as the particular solutions obtained in Section 2.3 below can be adapted correspondingly.

[^14]:    ${ }^{3}$ It is noteworthy that in the case of approximate controllability, the boundary and terminal data can be inconsistent.

[^15]:    ${ }^{4}$ Here the subscript $T$ indicates the dependence of $\boldsymbol{M}$ on $T$.

[^16]:    ${ }^{5}$ Note that, in general, the constraint is linear in boundary control and is nonlinear in distributed control.

[^17]:    ${ }^{6}$ The technique can be straightforwardly adapted to the case of higher dimensions.

[^18]:    ${ }^{7}$ In general, depending on the system domain, regularity of $K_{T}$ and $f_{T}$, etc., families of functions orthogonal with weight may need to be considered.

[^19]:    ${ }^{8}$ A solution of (2.26) in $L^{p}[0, T]$ with

    $$
    \|u\|_{L^{p}[0, T]} \rightarrow \min .
    $$

[^20]:    ${ }^{9}$ Note that in proceeding formulas the notation $F\left(x_{m}\right)$ means that the function $F$ depends on all $x_{m}, m=1, \ldots, M$.

[^21]:    ${ }^{10}$ The reason will become clear from the proceeding calculations.

[^22]:    ${ }^{11}$ Computations show that different materials do not significantly affect the solution, but only cause slight changes in numerical values of control parameters. That is why the consideration is restricted only by one material.

[^23]:    ${ }^{12}$ Regarding the right-hand side, recall Remark 2.10.

[^24]:    ${ }^{13}$ Here the dimensions are introduced to make the evaluation more realistic.

[^25]:    ${ }^{14}$ A more general problem with different heating regimes on different edges of the sheet, as well as with different distribution functions can be considered for achieving a better result. However, with the symmetry assumption, the study is considerably simplified.

[^26]:    ${ }^{1}$ Without losing the generality one can assume that $w_{T}=1$, because otherwise dividing both sides of the equality (3.10) by $w_{T}$, its form is preserved.

[^27]:    ${ }^{2}$ In the case of finite domains, boundary conditions are transformed in a similar way.

[^28]:    ${ }^{3}$ This directly follows from the generalized Hölder inequality as $p$ goes to infinity.

[^29]:    ${ }^{4}$ Note that it always holds in the case of approximate null-controllability.

